



Felix Friedrich

Data Structures and Algorithms

Course at D-MATH (CSE) of ETH Zurich

Spring 2021

Welcome!

Course homepage

<http://lec.inf.ethz.ch/DA/2021>

The team:

Assistants

Sebastian Balzer
Christoph Grötzbach
Ivana Klasovita
Stanislav Piasecki

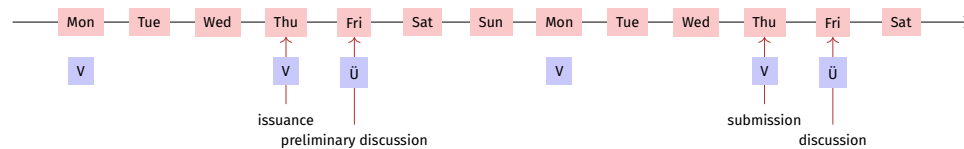
Back-Office

Aritra Dhar
Julia Chatain

Lecturer

Felix Friedrich

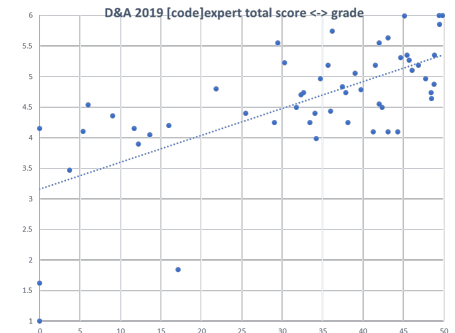
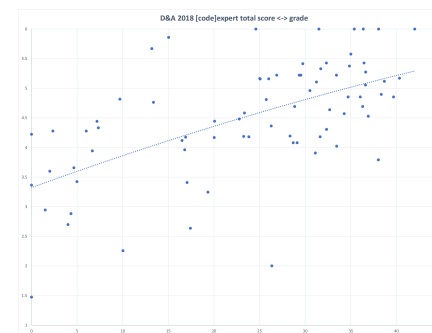
Exercises



- Exercises available at lectures.
- Preliminary discussion in the following recitation session
- Solution of the exercise until the day before the next recitation session.
- Discussion of the exercise in the next recitation session.

Exercises

- The solution of the weekly exercises is voluntary but strongly recommended.



It is so simple!

For the exercises we use an online development environment that requires only a browser, internet connection and your ETH login.

If you do not have access to a computer: there are a lot of computers publicly accessible at ETH.

4

Relevant for the exam

Material for the exam comprises

- Course content (lectures, handout)
- Exercises content (exercise sheets, recitation hours)

Written exam (150 min). Examination aids: four a4 pages. No constraints regarding content and layout (text, images, single/double page, margins, font size, etc.).

The exam will most likely be performed in hybrid form (on paper and at the computer).

6

Literature

Algorithmen und Datenstrukturen, T. Ottmann, P. Widmayer, Spektrum-Verlag, 5. Auflage, 2011

Algorithmen - Eine Einführung, T. Cormen, C. Leiserson, R. Rivest, C. Stein, Oldenbourg, 2010

Introduction to Algorithms, T. Cormen, C. Leiserson, R. Rivest, C. Stein, 3rd ed., MIT Press, 2009

The C++ Programming Language, B. Stroustrup, 4th ed., Addison-Wesley, 2013.

The Art of Multiprocessor Programming, M. Herlihy, N. Shavit, Elsevier, 2012.

5

Offer

- Doing the weekly exercise series → bonus of maximally 0.25 of a grade point for the exam.
- The bonus is proportional to the achieved points of **specially marked bonus-task**. The full number of points corresponds to a bonus of 0.25 of a grade point.
- The **admission** to the specially marked bonus tasks can depend on the successful completion of other exercise tasks. The achieved grade bonus expires as soon as the course has been given again.

7

Offer (Concretely)

- 3 bonus exercises in total; 2/3 of the points suffice for the exam bonus of 0.25 marks
- You can, e.g. fully solve 2 bonus exercises, or solve 3 bonus exercises to 66% each, or ...
- Bonus exercises must be unlocked (→ experience points) by successfully completing the weekly exercises
- It is again not necessary to solve all weekly exercises completely in order to unlock a bonus exercise
- Details: exercise sessions, online exercise system (Code Expert)

8

Should there be any Problems ...

- with the course content
 - definitely attend all recitation sessions
 - ask questions there
 - and/or contact the assistant
- further problems
 - Email to chef assistant (Aritra Dhar) or lecturer (Felix Friedrich)
- We are willing to help.

10

Academic integrity

Rule: You submit solutions that you have written yourself and that you have understood.

We check this (partially automatically) and reserve our rights to adopt disciplinary measures.

9

1. Introduction

Overview, Algorithms and Data Structures, Correctness, First Example

11

Goals of the course

- Understand the design and analysis of fundamental algorithms and data structures.
- An advanced insight into a modern programming model (with C++).
- Knowledge about chances, problems and limits of the parallel and concurrent computing.

12

Contents

data structures / algorithms

The notion invariant, cost model, Landau notation
algorithms design, induction
searching, selection and sorting
amortized analysis
dynamic programming
Minimum Spanning Trees, Fibonacci Heaps
shortest paths, Minimum Spanning Tree, Max-Flow
Fundamental algorithms on graphs,
dictionaries: hashing and search trees

programming with C++

RAII, Move Konstruktion, Smart Pointers,
Templates and generic programming
Exceptions
functors and lambdas
promises and futures
threads, mutex and monitors

parallel programming

parallelism vs. concurrency, speedup
(Amdahl/Gustavson), races, memory
reordering, atomic registers, RMW
(CAS,TAS), deadlock/starvation

14

1.2 Algorithms

[Cormen et al, Kap. 1; Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 1.1]

15

Algorithm

Algorithm

Well-defined procedure to compute output data from input data

16

Example Problem: Sorting

Input: A sequence of n numbers (comparable objects) (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)

Output: Permutation $(a'_1, a'_2, \dots, a'_n)$ of the sequence $(a_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$, such that $a'_1 \leq a'_2 \leq \dots \leq a'_n$

Possible input

$(1, 7, 3), (15, 13, 12, -0.5), (999, 998, 997, 996, \dots, 2, 1), (1), () \dots$

Every example represents a problem instance

The performance (speed) of an algorithm usually depends on the problem instance. Often there are “good” and “bad” instances.

Therefore we consider algorithms sometimes “in the average” and most often in the “worst case”.

17

Possible solution

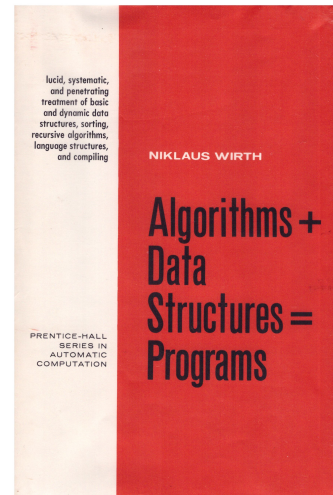
How many times are the lines executed each?

```
void sort(std::vector<int> a){
    std::size n = a.size()
    for (std::size i = 0; i<n ; ++i)
        for (std::size j = i+1; j<n; ++j)
            if (a[j] < a[i])
                std::swap(a[i],a[j])
}
```

18

Data Structures

- A data structure is a particular way of organizing data in a computer so that they can be used efficiently (in the algorithms operating on them).
- Programs = algorithms + data structures.



19

Examples for algorithmic problems

- Tables and statistics: sorting, selection and searching
- routing: shortest path algorithm, heap data structure
- DNA matching: Dynamic Programming
- evaluation order: Topological Sorting
- autocompletion and spell-checking: Dictionaries / Trees
- fast lookup : Hash-Tables
- the Travelling Salesman: Dynamic Programming, Minimum Spanning Tree, Simulated Annealing

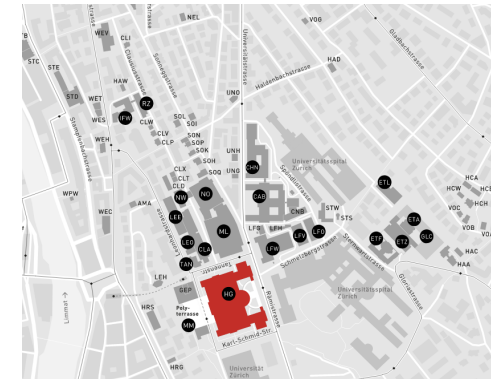
20

Characteristics

- Extremely large number of potential solutions
- Practical applicability

Typical Design Steps Example

Route planning



21

Typical Design Steps

1. **Specification of the problem:** find best (shortest time) path from A to B
2. **Abstraction:** graph with nodes, edges and edge-weights
3. **Idea** (heureka!): Dijkstra
4. **Data-structures and algorithms:** e.g. adjacency matrix / adjacency list, min-heap, hash-table ...
5. **Runtime analysis:** $\mathcal{O}((n + m) \cdot \log n)$
6. **Implementation:** Representation choice (e.g. adjacency matrix/ adjacency list/ objects)

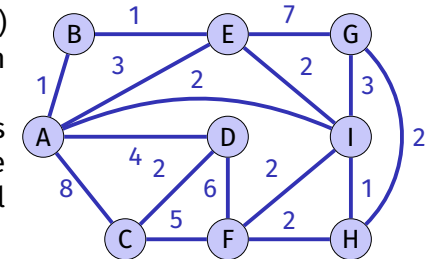


23

Difficult Problem: Travelling Salesman

Given: graph (map) with nodes (cities) and weighted edges (roads with length)

Wanted: Loop road through all cities such that each city is visited once (Hamilton-cycle) with minimal overall length.



The best known algorithm has a running time that increase exponentially with the number of nodes (cities).

Already finding a Hamilton cycle is a difficult problem in general. In contrast, the problem to find an Eulerian cycle, a cycle that uses each *edge* once, is a problem with polynomial running time.

24

Hard problems.

- NP-complete problems: no known efficient solution (the existence of such a solution is very improbable – but it has not yet been proven that there is none!)
- Example: travelling salesman problem

This course is *mostly* about problems that can be solved efficiently (in polynomial time).

25

2. Efficiency of algorithms

Efficiency of Algorithms, Random Access Machine Model, Function Growth, Asymptotics [Cormen et al, Kap. 2.2,3,4.2-4.4 | Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 1.1]

27

Efficiency

- If computers were infinitely fast and had an infinite amount of memory ...
- ... then we would still need the theory of algorithms (only) for statements about correctness (and termination).

Reality: resources are bounded and not free:

- Computing time → Efficiency
- Storage space → Efficiency

Actually, this course is nearly only about efficiency.

26

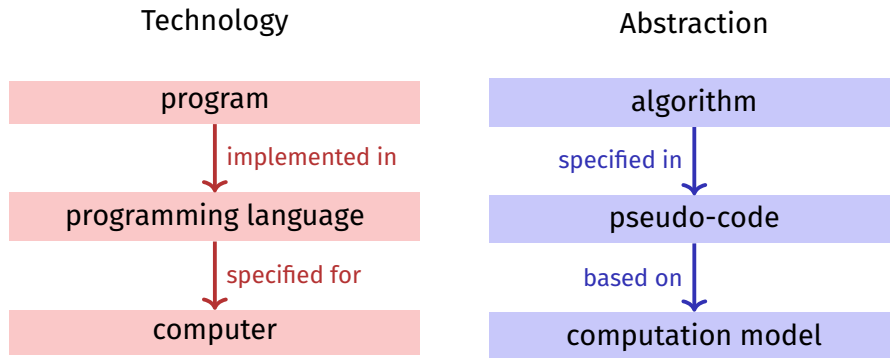
Efficiency of Algorithms

Goals

- Quantify the runtime behavior of an algorithm independent of the machine.
- Compare efficiency of algorithms.
- Understand dependence on the input size.

28

Programs and Algorithms



29

Technology Model

Random Access Machine (RAM) Model

- Execution model: instructions are executed one after the other (on one processor core).
- Memory model: constant access time (big array)
- Fundamental operations: computations (+, -, ..., ...) comparisons, assignment / copy on machine words (registers), flow control (jumps)
- Unit cost model: fundamental operations provide a cost of 1.
- Data types: fundamental types like size-limited integer or floating point number.

30

Size of the Input Data

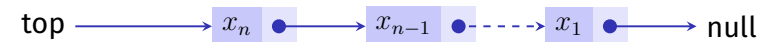
- Typical: number of input objects (of fundamental type).
- Sometimes: number bits for a *reasonable* / *cost-effective* representation of the data.
- fundamental types fit into word of size : $w \geq \log(\text{sizeof}(\text{mem}))$ bits.

31

For Dynamic Data Structures

Pointer Machine Model

- Objects bounded in size can be dynamically allocated in constant time
- Fields (with word-size) of the objects can be accessed in constant time 1.



32

Asymptotic behavior

An exact running time of an algorithm can normally not be predicted even for small input data.

- We consider the asymptotic behavior of the algorithm.
- And ignore all constant factors.

An operation with cost 20 is no worse than one with cost 1
Linear growth with gradient 5 is as good as linear growth with gradient 1.

33

Algorithms, Programs and Execution Time

Program: concrete implementation of an algorithm.

Execution time of the program: measurable value on a concrete machine.
Can be bounded from above and below.

Example 1

3GHz computer. Maximal number of operations per cycle (e.g. 8). \Rightarrow lower bound.

A single operations does never take longer than a day \Rightarrow upper bound.

From the perspective of the *asymptotic behavior* of the program, the bounds are unimportant.

34

2.2 Function growth

\mathcal{O} , Θ , Ω [Cormen et al, Kap. 3; Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 1.1]

Superficially

Use the asymptotic notation to specify the execution time of algorithms.

We write $\Theta(n^2)$ and mean that the algorithm behaves for large n like n^2 :
when the problem size is doubled, the execution time multiplies by four.

35

36

More precise: asymptotic upper bound

provided: a function $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

Definition:¹

$$\mathcal{O}(g) = \{f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \mid \\ \exists c > 0, \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N} : \\ \forall n \geq n_0 : 0 \leq f(n) \leq c \cdot g(n)\}$$

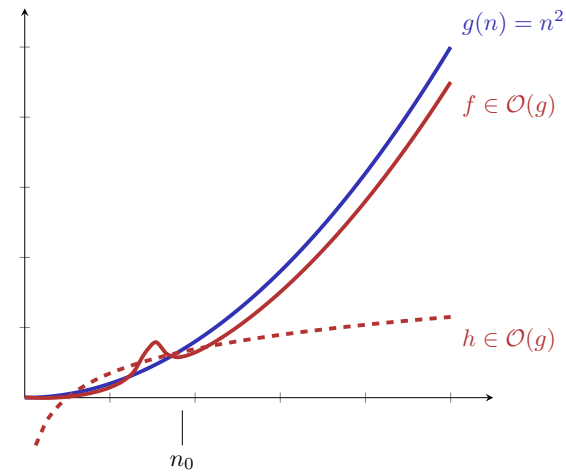
Notation:

$$\mathcal{O}(g(n)) := \mathcal{O}(g(\cdot)) = \mathcal{O}(g).$$

¹Ausgesprochen: Set of all functions $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ that satisfy: there is some (real valued) $c > 0$ and some $n_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $0 \leq f(n) \leq c \cdot g(n)$ for all $n \geq n_0$.

37

Graphic



38

Converse: asymptotic lower bound

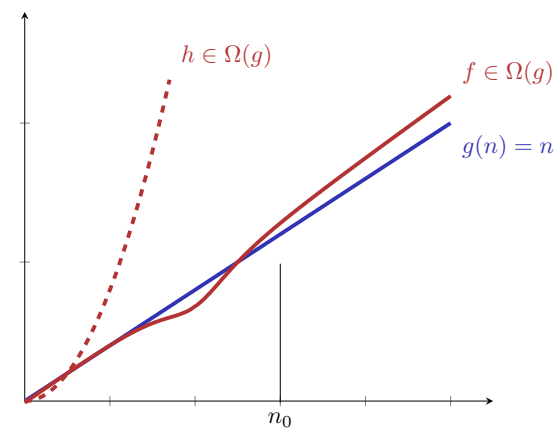
Given: a function $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

Definition:

$$\Omega(g) = \{f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \mid \\ \exists c > 0, \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N} : \\ \forall n \geq n_0 : 0 \leq c \cdot g(n) \leq f(n)\}$$

39

Example



40

Asymptotic tight bound

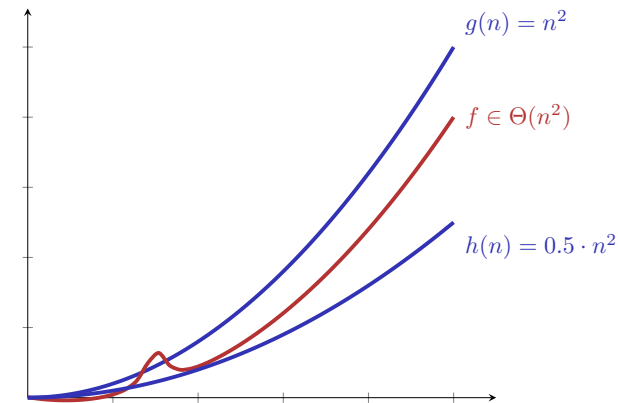
Given: function $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

Definition:

$$\Theta(g) := \Omega(g) \cap \mathcal{O}(g).$$

Simple, closed form: exercise.

Example



41

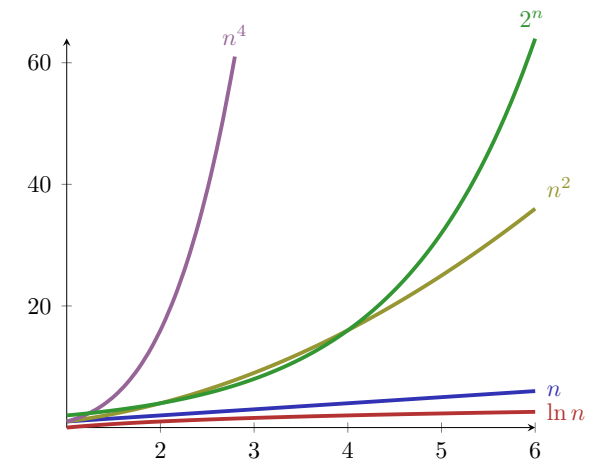
42

Notions of Growth

$\mathcal{O}(1)$	bounded	array access
$\mathcal{O}(\log \log n)$	double logarithmic	interpolated binary sorted sort
$\mathcal{O}(\log n)$	logarithmic	binary sorted search
$\mathcal{O}(\sqrt{n})$	like the square root	naive prime number test
$\mathcal{O}(n)$	linear	unsorted naive search
$\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$	superlinear / loglinear	good sorting algorithms
$\mathcal{O}(n^2)$	quadratic	simple sort algorithms
$\mathcal{O}(n^c)$	polynomial	matrix multiply
$\mathcal{O}(c^n)$	exponential	Travelling Salesman Dynamic Programming
$\mathcal{O}(n!)$	factorial	Travelling Salesman naively

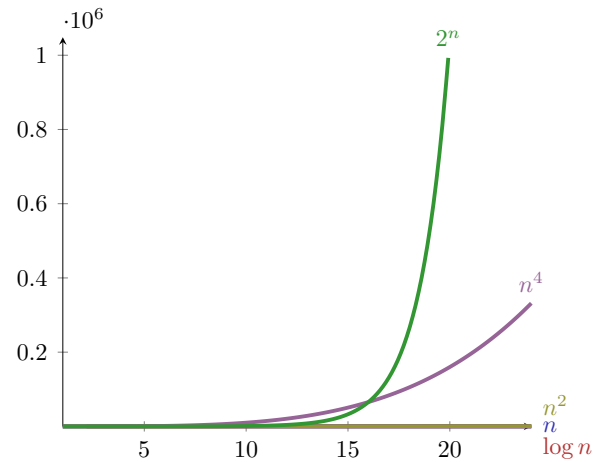
43

Small n



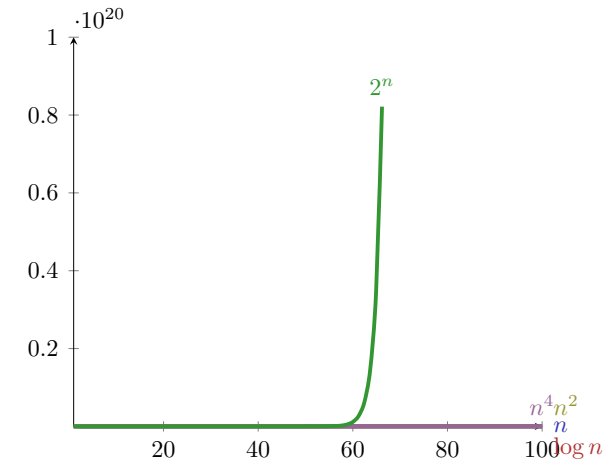
44

Larger n



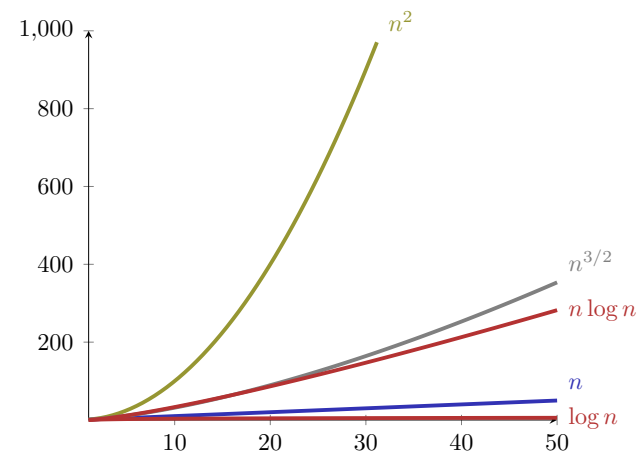
45

"Large" n



46

Logarithms



47

Time Consumption

Assumption 1 Operation = $1\mu s$.

problem size	1	100	10000	10^6	10^9
$\log_2 n$	$1\mu s$	$7\mu s$	$13\mu s$	$20\mu s$	$30\mu s$
n	$1\mu s$	$100\mu s$	$1/100s$	$1s$	17 minutes
$n \log_2 n$	$1\mu s$	$700\mu s$	$13/100\mu s$	$20s$	8.5 hours
n^2	$1\mu s$	$1/100s$	1.7 minutes	11.5 days	317 centuries
2^n	$1\mu s$	10^{14} centuries	$\approx \infty$	$\approx \infty$	$\approx \infty$

48

Useful Tool

Theorem 2

Let $f, g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+$ be two functions, then it holds that

1. $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{f(n)}{g(n)} = 0 \Rightarrow f \in \mathcal{O}(g), \mathcal{O}(f) \subsetneq \mathcal{O}(g)$.
2. $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{f(n)}{g(n)} = C > 0$ (C constant) $\Rightarrow f \in \Theta(g)$.
3. $\frac{f(n)}{g(n)} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} \infty \Rightarrow g \in \mathcal{O}(f), \mathcal{O}(g) \subsetneq \mathcal{O}(f)$.

About the Notation

Common casual notation

$$f = \mathcal{O}(g)$$

should be read as $f \in \mathcal{O}(g)$.

Clearly it holds that

$$f_1 = \mathcal{O}(g), f_2 = \mathcal{O}(g) \not\Rightarrow f_1 = f_2!$$

$$n = \mathcal{O}(n^2), n^2 = \mathcal{O}(n^2) \text{ but naturally } n \neq n^2.$$

We avoid this notation where it could lead to ambiguities.

49

50

Reminder: Efficiency: Arrays vs. Linked Lists

- Memory: our `avec` requires roughly n ints (vector size n), our `llvec` roughly $3n$ ints (a pointer typically requires 8 byte)

- Runtime (with `avec = std::vector`, `llvec = std::list`):

```

prepending (insert at front) [100,000x]:
  > avec: 675 ms
  > llvec: 10 ms
appending (insert at back) [100,000x]:
  > avec: 2 ms
  > llvec: 9 ms
removing first [100,000x]:
  > avec: 675 ms
  > llvec: 4 ms
removing last [100,000x]:
  > avec: 0 ms
  > llvec: 4 ms

removing randomly [10,000x]:
  > avec: 3 ms
  > llvec: 113 ms
inserting randomly [10,000x]:
  > avec: 16 ms
  > llvec: 117 ms
fully iterate sequentially (5000 elements) [5,000x]:
  > avec: 354 ms
  > llvec: 525 ms
    
```

Asymptotic Runtimes

With our new language ($\Omega, \mathcal{O}, \Theta$), we can now state the behavior of the data structures and their algorithms more precisely

Typical asymptotic running times (Anticipation!)

Data structure	Random Access	Insert	Next	Insert After Element	Search
<code>std::vector</code>	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(1) A$	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(n)$
<code>std::list</code>	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(n)$
<code>std::set</code>	–	$\Theta(\log n)$	$\Theta(\log n)$	–	$\Theta(\log n)$
<code>std::unordered_set</code>	–	$\Theta(1) P$	–	–	$\Theta(1) P$

A = amortized, P =expected, otherwise worst case

51

52

Complexity

Complexity of a problem P
Minimal (asymptotic) costs over all algorithms A that solve P .
Complexity of the single-digit multiplication of two numbers with n digits is $\Omega(n)$ and $\mathcal{O}(n^{\log_3 2})$ (Karatsuba Ofman).

3. Examples

Show Correctnes of an Algorithm or its Implementation, Recursion and Recurrences
[References to literatur at the examples]

Complexity

Problem	Complexity	$\mathcal{O}(n)$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$	$\mathcal{O}(n^2)$	$\Omega(n \log n)$
		\uparrow	\uparrow	\uparrow	\downarrow
Algorithm	Costs ²	$3n - 4$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$	$\Theta(n^2)$	$\Omega(n \log n)$
		\downarrow	\updownarrow	\updownarrow	\downarrow
Program	Execution time	$\Theta(n)$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$	$\Theta(n^2)$	$\Omega(n \log n)$

²Number fundamental operations

3.1 Ancient Egyptian Multiplication

Ancient Egyptian Multiplication– Example on how to show correctness of algorithms.

Ancient Egyptian Multiplication

3

Compute $11 \cdot 9$

11	9	9	11
22	4	18	5
44	2	36	2
88	1	72	1
99	—	99	

1. Double left, integer division by 2 on the right
2. Even number on the right \Rightarrow eliminate row.
3. Add remaining rows on the left.

³Also known as russian multiplication

57

Advantages

- Short description, easy to grasp
- Efficient to implement on a computer: double = left shift, divide by 2 = right shift

left shift $9 = 01001_2 \rightarrow 10010_2 = 18$
right shift $9 = 01001_2 \rightarrow 00100_2 = 4$

58

Questions

- For which kind of inputs does the algorithm deliver a correct result (in finite time)?
- How do you prove its correctness?
- What is a good measure for its efficiency?

59

The Essentials

If $b > 1, a \in \mathbb{Z}$, then:

$$a \cdot b = \begin{cases} 2a \cdot \frac{b}{2} & \text{if } b \text{ even,} \\ a + 2a \cdot \frac{b-1}{2} & \text{if } b \text{ odd.} \end{cases}$$

60

Termination

$$a \cdot b = \begin{cases} a & \text{falls } b = 1, \\ 2a \cdot \frac{b}{2} & \text{if } b \text{ even,} \\ a + 2a \cdot \frac{b-1}{2} & \text{if } b \text{ odd.} \end{cases}$$

Recursively, Functional

$$f(a, b) = \begin{cases} a & \text{if } b = 1, \\ f(2a, \frac{b}{2}) & \text{if } b \text{ even,} \\ a + f(2a, \frac{b-1}{2}) & \text{if } b \text{ odd.} \end{cases}$$

61

62

Implemented as a function

```
// pre: b>0
// post: return a*b
int f(int a, int b){
    if(b==1)
        return a;
    else if (b%2 == 0)
        return f(2*a, b/2);
    else
        return a + f(2*a, (b-1)/2);
}
```

Correctnes: Mathematical Proof

$$f(a, b) = \begin{cases} a & \text{if } b = 1, \\ f(2a, \frac{b}{2}) & \text{if } b \text{ even,} \\ a + f(2a \cdot \frac{b-1}{2}) & \text{if } b \text{ odd.} \end{cases}$$

Remaining to show: $f(a, b) = a \cdot b$ for $a \in \mathbb{Z}, b \in \mathbb{N}^+$.

63

64

Correctnes: Mathematical Proof by Induction

Let $a \in \mathbb{Z}$, to show $f(a, b) = a \cdot b \quad \forall b \in \mathbb{N}^+$.

Base clause: $f(a, 1) = a = a \cdot 1$

Hypothesis: $f(a, b') = a \cdot b' \quad \forall 0 < b' \leq b$

Step: $f(a, b') = a \cdot b' \quad \forall 0 < b' \leq b \xRightarrow{!} f(a, b+1) = a \cdot (b+1)$

$$f(a, b+1) = \begin{cases} f(2a, \overbrace{\frac{b+1}{2}}^{0 < \cdot \leq b}) \stackrel{i.H.}{=} a \cdot (b+1) & \text{if } b > 0 \text{ odd,} \\ a + f(2a, \underbrace{\frac{b}{2}}_{0 < \cdot < b}) \stackrel{i.H.}{=} a + a \cdot b & \text{if } b > 0 \text{ even.} \end{cases}$$

■

65

[Code Transformations: End Recursion]

The recursion can be written as *end recursion*

```
// pre: b>0
// post: return a*b
int f(int a, int b){
    if(b==1)
        return a;
    else if (b%2 == 0)
        return f(2*a, b/2);
    else
        return a + f(2*a, (b-1)/2);
}
```

→

```
// pre: b>0
// post: return a*b
int f(int a, int b){
    if(b==1)
        return a;
    int z=0;
    if (b%2 != 0){
        --b;
        z=a;
    }
    return z + f(2*a, b/2);
}
```

66

[Code-Transformation: End-Recursion \Rightarrow Iteration]

```
// pre: b>0
// post: return a*b
int f(int a, int b){
    if(b==1)
        return a;
    int z=0;
    if (b%2 != 0){
        --b;
        z=a;
    }
    return z + f(2*a, b/2);
}
```

→

```
int f(int a, int b) {
    int res = 0;
    while (b != 1) {
        int z = 0;
        if (b % 2 != 0){
            --b;
            z = a;
        }
        res += z;
        a *= 2; // new a
        b /= 2; // new b
    }
    res += a; // base case b=1
    return res;
}
```

67

[Code-Transformation: Simplify]

```
int f(int a, int b) {
    int res = 0;
    while (b != 1) {
        int z = 0;
        if (b % 2 != 0){
            --b; → part of the division
            z = a; → directly in res
        }
        res += z;
        a *= 2;
        b /= 2;
    }
    res += a; → into the loop
    return res;
}
```

→

```
// pre: b>0
// post: return a*b
int f(int a, int b) {
    int res = 0;
    while (b > 0) {
        if (b % 2 != 0)
            res += a;
        a *= 2;
        b /= 2;
    }
    return res;
}
```

68

Correctness: Reasoning using Invariants!

```
// pre: b>0
// post: return a*b
int f(int a, int b) {
    int res = 0;
    while (b > 0) {
        if (b % 2 != 0){
            res += a;
            --b;
        }
        a *= 2;
        b /= 2;
    }
    return res;
}
```

let $x := a \cdot b$.

here: $x = a \cdot b + res$

if here $x = a \cdot b + res \dots$

... then also here $x = a \cdot b + res$
 b even

here: $x = a \cdot b + res$

here: $x = a \cdot b + res$ and $b = 0$

therefore $res = x$.

69

[Further simplification]

```
// pre: b>0
// post: return a*b
int f(int a, int b) {
    int res = 0;
    while (b > 0) {
        if (b % 2 != 0){
            res += a;
            --b;
        }
        a *= 2;
        b /= 2;
    }
    return res;
}
```



```
// pre: b>0
// post: return a*b
int f(int a, int b) {
    int res = 0;
    while (b > 0) {
        res += a * (b%2);
        a *= 2;
        b /= 2;
    }
    return res;
}
```

72

Conclusion

The expression $a \cdot b + res$ is an invariant

- Values of a , b , res change but the invariant remains basically unchanged: The invariant is only temporarily discarded by some statement but then re-established. If such short statement sequences are considered atomic, the value remains indeed invariant
- In particular the loop contains an invariant, called *loop invariant* and it operates there like the induction step in induction proofs.
- Invariants are obviously powerful tools for proofs!

70

[Analysis]

```
// pre: b>0
// post: return a*b
int f(int a, int b) {
    int res = 0;
    while (b > 0) {
        res += a * (b%2);
        a *= 2;
        b /= 2;
    }
    return res;
}
```

Ancient Egyptian Multiplication corresponds to the school method with radix 2.

$$\begin{array}{rcccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \times & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
\hline
& & & & & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & (9) \\
& & & & & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & (18) \\
\hline
& & & & & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
& & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & & & & (72) \\
\hline
& & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & (99)
\end{array}$$

73

Efficiency

Question: how long does a multiplication of a and b take?

■ Measure for efficiency

- Total number of fundamental operations: double, divide by 2, shift, test for “even”, addition
- In the recursive and recursive code: maximally 6 operations per call or iteration, respectively

■ Essential criterion:

- Number of recursion calls or
- Number iterations (in the iterative case)

- $\frac{b}{2^n} \leq 1$ holds for $n \geq \log_2 b$. Consequently not more than $6 \lceil \log_2 b \rceil$ fundamental operations.

74

3.2 Fast Integer Multiplication

[Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 1.2.3]

75

Example 2: Multiplication of large Numbers

Primary school:

a	b		c	d	
6	2	·	3	7	
					1 4
					$d \cdot b$
					4 2
					$d \cdot a$
					6
					$c \cdot b$
					1 8
					$c \cdot a$
=	2	2	9	4	

$2 \cdot 2 = 4$ single-digit multiplications. \Rightarrow multiplication of two n -digit numbers: n^2 single-digit multiplications

76

Observation

$$\begin{aligned}
 ab \cdot cd &= (10 \cdot a + b) \cdot (10 \cdot c + d) \\
 &= 100 \cdot a \cdot c + 10 \cdot a \cdot d \\
 &\quad + 10 \cdot b \cdot c + b \cdot d \\
 &\quad + 10 \cdot (a - b) \cdot (d - c)
 \end{aligned}$$

77

Improvement?

a	b	c	d	
6	2	3	7	
		1	4	$d \cdot b$
		1	4	$d \cdot b$
		1	6	$(a - b) \cdot (d - c)$
		1	8	$c \cdot a$
		1	8	$c \cdot a$
=	2	2	9	4

→ 3 single-digit multiplications.

Large Numbers

$$6237 \cdot 5898 = \underbrace{62}_{a'} \underbrace{37}_{b'} \cdot \underbrace{58}_{c'} \underbrace{98}_{d'}$$

Recursive / inductive application: compute $a' \cdot c'$, $a' \cdot d'$, $b' \cdot c'$ and $c' \cdot d'$ as shown above.

→ $3 \cdot 3 = 9$ instead of 16 single-digit multiplications.

78

79

Generalization

Assumption: two numbers with n digits each, $n = 2^k$ for some k .

$$\begin{aligned} (10^{n/2}a + b) \cdot (10^{n/2}c + d) &= 10^n \cdot a \cdot c + 10^{n/2} \cdot a \cdot d \\ &\quad + 10^{n/2} \cdot b \cdot c + b \cdot d \\ &\quad + 10^{n/2} \cdot (a - b) \cdot (d - c) \end{aligned}$$

Recursive application of this formula: algorithm by Karatsuba and Ofman (1962).

Algorithm Karatsuba Ofman

Input: Two positive integers x and y with n decimal digits each: $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$, $(y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$

Output: Product $x \cdot y$

if $n = 1$ **then**

return $x_1 \cdot y_1$

else

 Let $m := \lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor$

 Divide $a := (x_1, \dots, x_m)$, $b := (x_{m+1}, \dots, x_n)$, $c := (y_1, \dots, y_m)$,

$d := (y_{m+1}, \dots, y_n)$

 Compute recursively $A := a \cdot c$, $B := b \cdot d$, $C := (a - b) \cdot (d - c)$

 Compute $R := 10^n \cdot A + 10^m \cdot A + 10^m \cdot B + B + 10^m \cdot C$

return R

80

81

Analysis

$M(n)$: Number of single-digit multiplications.

Recursive application of the algorithm from above \Rightarrow recursion equality:

$$M(2^k) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } k = 0, \\ 3 \cdot M(2^{k-1}) & \text{if } k > 0. \end{cases} \quad (\text{R})$$

82

Proof: induction

Hypothesis $H(k)$:

$$M(2^k) = F(k) := 3^k. \quad (\text{H})$$

Claim:

$H(k)$ holds for all $k \in \mathbb{N}_0$.

Base clause $k = 0$:

$$M(2^0) \stackrel{R}{=} 1 = F(0). \quad \checkmark$$

Induction step $H(k) \Rightarrow H(k+1)$:

$$M(2^{k+1}) \stackrel{R}{=} 3 \cdot M(2^k) \stackrel{H(k)}{=} 3 \cdot F(k) = 3^{k+1} = F(k+1). \quad \checkmark$$

■

84

Iterative Substitution

Iterative substitution of the recursion formula in order to guess a solution of the recursion formula:

$$\begin{aligned} M(2^k) &= 3 \cdot M(2^{k-1}) = 3 \cdot 3 \cdot M(2^{k-2}) = 3^2 \cdot M(2^{k-2}) \\ &= \dots \\ &\stackrel{!}{=} 3^k \cdot M(2^0) = 3^k. \end{aligned}$$

83

Comparison

Traditionally n^2 single-digit multiplications.

Karatsuba/Ofman:

$$M(n) = 3^{\log_2 n} = (2^{\log_2 3})^{\log_2 n} = 2^{\log_2 3 \log_2 n} = n^{\log_2 3} \approx n^{1.58}.$$

Example: number with 1000 digits: $1000^2/1000^{1.58} \approx 18$.

85

Best possible algorithm?

We only know the upper bound $n^{\log_2 3}$.

There are (for large n) practically relevant algorithms that are faster.

Example: Schönhage-Strassen algorithm (1971) based on fast Fouriertransformation with running time $\mathcal{O}(n \log n \cdot \log \log n)$. The best upper bound is not known. ⁴

Lower bound: n . Each digit has to be considered at least once.

⁴In March 2019, David Harvey and Joris van der Hoeven have shown an $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$ algorithm that is practically irrelevant yet. It is conjectured, but yet unproven that this is the best lower bound we can get.

86

Appendix: Asymptotics with Addition and Shifts

For each multiplication of two n -digit numbers we also should take into account a constant number of additions, subtractions and shifts

Additions, subtractions and shifts of n -digit numbers cost $\mathcal{O}(n)$

Therefore the asymptotic running time is determined (with some $c > 1$, $d > 0$) by the following recurrence

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} 3 \cdot T\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right) + c \cdot n & \text{if } n > 1 \\ d & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

87

Appendix: Asymptotics with Addition and Shifts

Assumption: $n = 2^k$, $k > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} T(2^k) &= 3 \cdot T(2^{k-1}) + c \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3 \cdot (3 \cdot T(2^{k-2}) + c \cdot 2^{k-1}) + c \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3 \cdot (3 \cdot (3 \cdot T(2^{k-3}) + c \cdot 2^{k-2}) + c \cdot 2^{k-1}) + c \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3 \cdot (3 \cdot (\dots (3 \cdot T(2^{k-k}) + c \cdot 2^1) \dots) + c \cdot 2^{k-1}) + c \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3^k \cdot d + c \cdot 2^k \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \frac{3^i}{2^i} = 3^k \cdot d + c \cdot 2^k \frac{3^k - 1}{\frac{3}{2} - 1} \\ &= 3^k(d + 2c) - 2c \cdot 2^k \end{aligned}$$

Thus $T(2^k) = 3^k(d + 2c) - 2c \cdot 2^k \in \Theta(3^k) = \Theta(3^{\log_2 n}) = \Theta(n^{\log_2 3})$.

88

3.3 Maximum Subarray Problem

Algorithm Design – Maximum Subarray Problem [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 1.3]
Divide and Conquer [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 1.2.2. S.9; Cormen et al, Kap. 4-4.1]

89

Algorithm Design

Inductive development of an algorithm: partition into subproblems, use solutions for the subproblems to find the overall solution.

Goal: development of the asymptotically most efficient (correct) algorithm.

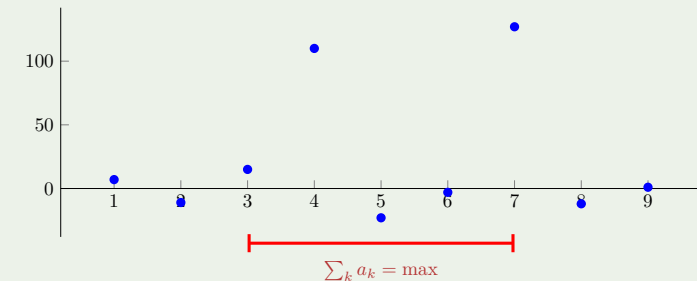
Efficiency towards run time costs (# fundamental operations) or /and memory consumption.

Maximum Subarray Problem

Given: an array of n real numbers (a_1, \dots, a_n) .

Wanted: interval $[i, j]$, $1 \leq i \leq j \leq n$ with maximal positive sum $\sum_{k=i}^j a_k$.

$a = (7, -11, 15, 110, -23, -3, 127, -12, 1)$



90

91

Naive Maximum Subarray Algorithm

Input: A sequence of n numbers (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)

Output: I, J such that $\sum_{k=I}^J a_k$ maximal.

$M \leftarrow 0; I \leftarrow 1; J \leftarrow 0$

for $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ **do**

for $j \in \{i, \dots, n\}$ **do**

$m = \sum_{k=i}^j a_k$

if $m > M$ **then**

$M \leftarrow m; I \leftarrow i; J \leftarrow j$

return I, J

Analysis

Theorem 3

The naive algorithm for the Maximum Subarray problem executes $\Theta(n^3)$ additions.

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=i}^n (j - i + 1) &= \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=0}^{n-i} (j + 1) = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^{n-i+1} j = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{(n-i+1)(n-i+2)}{2} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^n \frac{i \cdot (i+1)}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\sum_{i=1}^n i^2 + \sum_{i=1}^n i \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{n(2n+1)(n+1)}{6} + \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \right) = \frac{n^3 + 3n^2 + 2n}{6} = \Theta(n^3). \end{aligned}$$

92

93

Observation

$$\sum_{k=i}^j a_k = \underbrace{\left(\sum_{k=1}^j a_k \right)}_{S_j} - \underbrace{\left(\sum_{k=1}^{i-1} a_k \right)}_{S_{i-1}}$$

Prefix sums

$$S_i := \sum_{k=1}^i a_k.$$

Analysis

Theorem 4

The prefix sum algorithm for the Maximum Subarray problem conducts $\Theta(n^2)$ additions and subtractions.

Proof:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n 1 + \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=i}^n 1 = n + \sum_{i=1}^n (n - i + 1) = n + \sum_{i=1}^n i = \Theta(n^2)$$

■

Maximum Subarray Algorithm with Prefix Sums

Input: A sequence of n numbers (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)

Output: I, J such that $\sum_{k=I}^J a_k$ maximal.

$S_0 \leftarrow 0$

for $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ **do** // prefix sum

$S_i \leftarrow S_{i-1} + a_i$

$M \leftarrow 0; I \leftarrow 1; J \leftarrow 0$

for $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ **do**

for $j \in \{i, \dots, n\}$ **do**

$m = S_j - S_{i-1}$

if $m > M$ **then**

$M \leftarrow m; I \leftarrow i; J \leftarrow j$

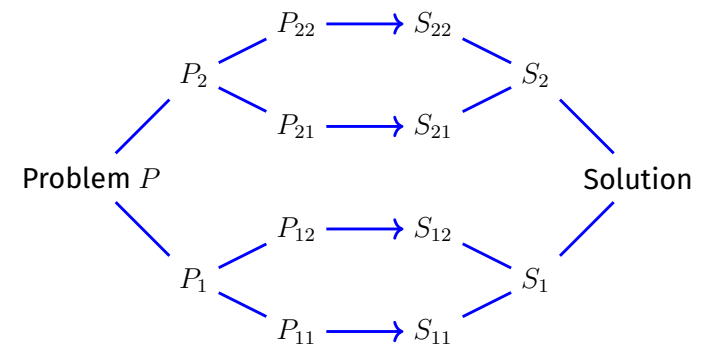
94

95

divide et impera

Divide and Conquer

Divide the problem into subproblems that contribute to the simplified computation of the overall problem.



96

97

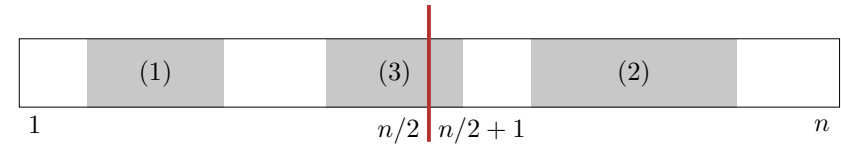
Maximum Subarray – Divide

- **Divide:** Divide the problem into two (roughly) equally sized halves:
 $(a_1, \dots, a_n) = (a_1, \dots, a_{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}, a_{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor + 1}, \dots, a_n)$
- **Simplifying assumption:** $n = 2^k$ for some $k \in \mathbb{N}$.

Maximum Subarray – Conquer

If i and j are indices of a solution \Rightarrow case by case analysis:

1. Solution in left half $1 \leq i \leq j \leq n/2 \Rightarrow$ **Recursion (left half)**
2. Solution in right half $n/2 < i \leq j \leq n \Rightarrow$ **Recursion (right half)**
3. Solution in the middle $1 \leq i \leq n/2 < j \leq n \Rightarrow$ **Subsequent observation**



98

99

Maximum Subarray – Observation

Assumption: solution in the middle $1 \leq i \leq n/2 < j \leq n$

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_{\max} &= \max_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq n/2 \\ n/2 < j \leq n}} \sum_{k=i}^j a_k = \max_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq n/2 \\ n/2 < j \leq n}} \left(\sum_{k=i}^{n/2} a_k + \sum_{k=n/2+1}^j a_k \right) \\
 &= \max_{1 \leq i \leq n/2} \sum_{k=i}^{n/2} a_k + \max_{n/2 < j \leq n} \sum_{k=n/2+1}^j a_k \\
 &= \max_{1 \leq i \leq n/2} \underbrace{S_{n/2} - S_{i-1}}_{\text{suffix sum}} + \max_{n/2 < j \leq n} \underbrace{S_j - S_{n/2}}_{\text{prefix sum}}
 \end{aligned}$$

Maximum Subarray Divide and Conquer Algorithm

Input: A sequence of n numbers (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)

Output: Maximal $\sum_{k=i'}^{j'} a_k$.

if $n = 1$ **then**

return $\max\{a_1, 0\}$

else

 Divide $a = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$ in $A_1 = (a_1, \dots, a_{n/2})$ und $A_2 = (a_{n/2+1}, \dots, a_n)$

 Recursively compute best solution W_1 in A_1

 Recursively compute best solution W_2 in A_2

 Compute greatest suffix sum S in A_1

 Compute greatest prefix sum P in A_2

 Let $W_3 \leftarrow S + P$

return $\max\{W_1, W_2, W_3\}$

100

101

Analysis

Theorem 5

The divide and conquer algorithm for the maximum subarray sum problem conducts a number of $\Theta(n \log n)$ additions and comparisons.

Analysis

Input: A sequence of n numbers (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)

Output: Maximal $\sum_{k=i'}^{j'} a_k$.

if $n = 1$ **then**

$\Theta(1)$ **return** $\max\{a_1, 0\}$

else

$\Theta(1)$ Divide $a = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$ in $A_1 = (a_1, \dots, a_{n/2})$ und $A_2 = (a_{n/2+1}, \dots, a_n)$

$T(n/2)$ Recursively compute best solution W_1 in A_1

$T(n/2)$ Recursively compute best solution W_2 in A_2

$\Theta(n)$ Compute greatest suffix sum S in A_1

$\Theta(n)$ Compute greatest prefix sum P in A_2

$\Theta(1)$ Let $W_3 \leftarrow S + P$

$\Theta(1)$ **return** $\max\{W_1, W_2, W_3\}$

102

103

Analysis

Recursion equation

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} c & \text{if } n = 1 \\ 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + a \cdot n & \text{if } n > 1 \end{cases}$$

Analysis

Mit $n = 2^k$:

$$\bar{T}(k) := T(2^k) = \begin{cases} c & \text{if } k = 0 \\ 2\bar{T}(k-1) + a \cdot 2^k & \text{if } k > 0 \end{cases}$$

Solution:

$$\bar{T}(k) = 2^k \cdot c + \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} 2^i \cdot a \cdot 2^{k-i} = c \cdot 2^k + a \cdot k \cdot 2^k = \Theta(k \cdot 2^k)$$

also

$$T(n) = \Theta(n \log n)$$

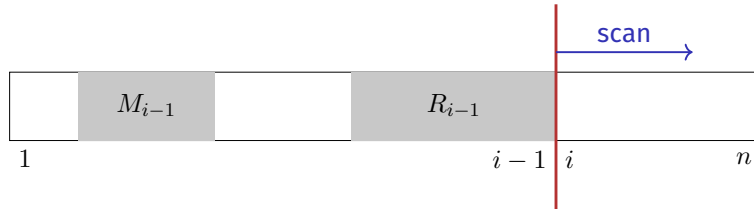


104

105

Maximum Subarray Sum Problem – Inductively

Assumption: maximal value M_{i-1} of the subarray sum is known for (a_1, \dots, a_{i-1}) ($1 < i \leq n$).



a_i : generates at most a better interval at the right bound (prefix sum).

$$R_{i-1} \Rightarrow R_i = \max\{R_{i-1} + a_i, 0\}$$

106

Inductive Maximum Subarray Algorithm

Input: A sequence of n numbers (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) .

Output: $\max\{0, \max_{i,j} \sum_{k=i}^j a_k\}$.

$M \leftarrow 0$

$R \leftarrow 0$

for $i = 1 \dots n$ **do**

$R \leftarrow R + a_i$

if $R < 0$ **then**

$R \leftarrow 0$

if $R > M$ **then**

$M \leftarrow R$

return M ;

107

Analysis

Theorem 6

The inductive algorithm for the Maximum Subarray problem conducts a number of $\Theta(n)$ additions and comparisons.

108

Complexity of the problem?

Can we improve over $\Theta(n)$?

Every correct algorithm for the Maximum Subarray Sum problem must consider each element in the algorithm.

Assumption: the algorithm does not consider a_i .

1. The algorithm provides a solution including a_i . Repeat the algorithm with a_i so small that the solution must not have contained the point in the first place.
2. The algorithm provides a solution not including a_i . Repeat the algorithm with a_i so large that the solution must have contained the point in the first place.

109

Complexity of the maximum Subarray Sum Problem

Theorem 7

The Maximum Subarray Sum Problem has Complexity $\Theta(n)$.

Proof: Inductive algorithm with asymptotic execution time $\mathcal{O}(n)$.

Every algorithm has execution time $\Omega(n)$.

Thus the complexity of the problem is $\Omega(n) \cap \mathcal{O}(n) = \Theta(n)$. ■

110

Logarithms

$$\log_a y = x \Leftrightarrow a^x = y \quad (a > 0, y > 0)$$

$$\log_a (x \cdot y) = \log_a x + \log_a y$$

$$a^x \cdot a^y = a^{x+y}$$

$$\log_a \frac{x}{y} = \log_a x - \log_a y$$

$$\frac{a^x}{a^y} = a^{x-y}$$

$$\log_a x^y = y \log_a x$$

$$a^{x \cdot y} = (a^x)^y$$

$$\log_a n! = \sum_{i=1}^n \log i$$

$$\log_b x = \log_b a \cdot \log_a x$$

$$a^{\log_b x} = x^{\log_b a}$$

To see the last line, replace $x \rightarrow a^{\log_a x}$

112

3.4 Appendix

Derivation and repetition of some mathematical formulas

111

Sums

$$\sum_{i=0}^n i = \frac{n \cdot (n+1)}{2} \in \Theta(n^2)$$

Trick

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=0}^n i &= \frac{1}{2} \left(\sum_{i=0}^n i + \sum_{i=0}^n n - i \right) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=0}^n i + n - i \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=0}^n n = \frac{1}{2} (n+1) \cdot n \end{aligned}$$

113

Sums

$$\sum_{i=0}^n i^2 = \frac{n \cdot (n+1) \cdot (2n+1)}{6}$$

Trick:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^n i^3 - (i-1)^3 &= \sum_{i=0}^n i^3 - \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} i^3 = n^3 \\ \sum_{i=1}^n i^3 - (i-1)^3 &= \sum_{i=1}^n i^3 - i^3 + 3i^2 - 3i + 1 = n - \frac{3}{2}n \cdot (n+1) + 3 \sum_{i=0}^n i^2 \\ \Rightarrow \sum_{i=0}^n i^2 &= \frac{1}{6}(2n^3 + 3n^2 + n) \in \Theta(n^3)\end{aligned}$$

Can easily be generalized: $\sum_{i=1}^n i^k \in \Theta(n^{k+1})$.

114

Geometric Series

$$\sum_{i=0}^n \rho^i \stackrel{!}{=} \frac{1 - \rho^{n+1}}{1 - \rho}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=0}^n \rho^i \cdot (1 - \rho) &= \sum_{i=0}^n \rho^i - \sum_{i=0}^n \rho^{i+1} = \sum_{i=0}^n \rho^i - \sum_{i=1}^{n+1} \rho^i \\ &= \rho^0 - \rho^{n+1} = 1 - \rho^{n+1}.\end{aligned}$$

For $0 \leq \rho < 1$:

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \rho^i = \frac{1}{1 - \rho}$$

115

4. Searching

Linear Search, Binary Search, (Interpolation Search,) Lower Bounds
[Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 3.2, Cormen et al, Kap. 2: Problems 2.1-3, 2.2-3, 2.3-5]

The Search Problem

Provided

- A set of data sets

telephone book, dictionary, symbol table

- Each dataset has a key k .
- Keys are comparable: unique answer to the question $k_1 \leq k_2$ for keys k_1, k_2 .

Task: find data set by key k .

116

117

Search in Array

Provided

- Array A with n elements $(A[1], \dots, A[n])$.
- Key b

Wanted: index k , $1 \leq k \leq n$ with $A[k] = b$ or "not found".

22	20	32	10	35	24	42	38	28	41
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

Linear Search

Traverse the array from $A[1]$ to $A[n]$.

- Best case: 1 comparison.
- Worst case: n comparisons.
- Assumption: each permutation of the n keys with same probability.
Expected number of comparisons for the successful search:

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n+1}{2}.$$

118

119

Search in a Sorted Array

Provided

- Sorted array A with n elements $(A[1], \dots, A[n])$ with $A[1] \leq A[2] \leq \dots \leq A[n]$.
- Key b

Wanted: index k , $1 \leq k \leq n$ with $A[k] = b$ or "not found".

10	20	22	24	28	32	35	38	41	42
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

Divide and Conquer!

Search $b = 23$.

10	20	22	24	28	32	35	38	41	42	$b < 28$
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
10	20	22	24	28	32	35	38	41	42	$b > 20$
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
10	20	22	24	28	32	35	38	41	42	$b > 22$
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
10	20	22	24	28	32	35	38	41	42	$b < 24$
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
10	20	22	24	28	32	35	38	41	42	erfolglos
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	

120

121

Binary Search Algorithm BSearch(A, l, r, b)

Input: Sorted array A of n keys. Key b . Bounds $1 \leq l, r \leq n$ mit $l \leq r$ or $l = r + 1$.

Output: Index $m \in [l, \dots, r + 1]$, such that $A[i] \leq b$ for all $l \leq i < m$ and $A[i] \geq b$ for all $m < i \leq r$.

$m \leftarrow \lfloor (l + r) / 2 \rfloor$

if $l > r$ **then** // Unsuccessful search

return l

else if $b = A[m]$ **then** // found

return m

else if $b < A[m]$ **then** // element to the left

return BSearch($A, l, m - 1, b$)

else // $b > A[m]$: element to the right

return BSearch($A, m + 1, r, b$)

Analysis (worst case)

Recurrence ($n = 2^k$)

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} d & \text{falls } n = 1, \\ T(n/2) + c & \text{falls } n > 1. \end{cases}$$

Compute:

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + c = T\left(\frac{n}{4}\right) + 2c = \dots \\ &= T\left(\frac{n}{2^i}\right) + i \cdot c \\ &= T\left(\frac{n}{n}\right) + \log_2 n \cdot c = d + c \cdot \log_2 n \in \Theta(\log n) \end{aligned}$$

122

123

Analysis (worst case)

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} d & \text{if } n = 1, \\ T(n/2) + c & \text{if } n > 1. \end{cases}$$

Guess : $T(n) = d + c \cdot \log_2 n$

Proof by induction:

■ **Base clause:** $T(1) = d$.

■ **Hypothesis:** $T(n/2) = d + c \cdot \log_2 n/2$

■ **Step:** $(n/2 \rightarrow n)$

$$T(n) = T(n/2) + c = d + c \cdot (\log_2 n - 1) + c = d + c \log_2 n.$$

124

Result

Theorem 8

The binary sorted search algorithm requires $\Theta(\log n)$ fundamental operations in the worst case.

125

Iterative Binary Search Algorithm

Input: Sorted array A of n keys. Key b .

Output: Index of the found element. 0, if unsuccessful.

$l \leftarrow 1; r \leftarrow n$

while $l \leq r$ **do**

$m \leftarrow \lfloor (l+r)/2 \rfloor$

if $A[m] = b$ **then**

return m

else if $A[m] < b$ **then**

$l \leftarrow m + 1$

else

$r \leftarrow m - 1$

return *NotFound*;

126

[Can this be improved?]

Assumption: *values* of the array are uniformly distributed.

Example

Search for "Becker" at the very beginning of a telephone book while search for "Wawrinka" rather close to the end.

Binary search always starts in the middle.

Binary search always takes $m = \left\lfloor l + \frac{r-l}{2} \right\rfloor$.

128

Correctness

Algorithm terminates only if A is empty or b is found.

Invariant: If b is in A then b is in domain $A[l..r]$

Proof by induction

- Base clause $b \in A[1..n]$ (oder nicht)
- Hypothesis: invariant holds after i steps.
- Step:
 - $b < A[m] \Rightarrow b \in A[l..m-1]$
 - $b > A[m] \Rightarrow b \in A[m+1..r]$

127

[Interpolation search]

Expected relative position of b in the search interval $[l, r]$

$$\rho = \frac{b - A[l]}{A[r] - A[l]} \in [0, 1].$$

New 'middle': $l + \rho \cdot (r - l)$

Expected number of comparisons $\mathcal{O}(\log \log n)$ (without proof).

Would you always prefer interpolation search?

No: worst case number of comparisons $\Omega(n)$.

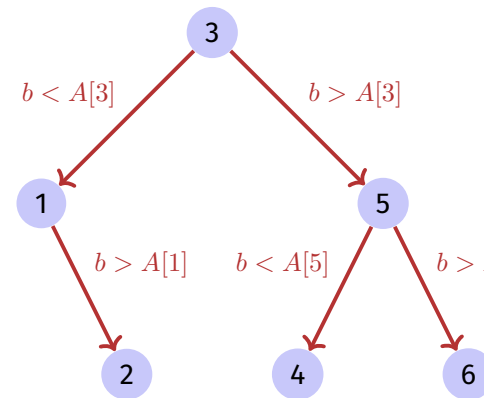
129

Lower Bounds

Binary Search (worst case): $\Theta(\log n)$ comparisons.

Does for *any* search algorithm in a sorted array (worst case) hold that number comparisons = $\Omega(\log n)$?

Decision tree



■ For any input $b = A[i]$ the algorithm must succeed \Rightarrow decision tree comprises at least n nodes.

■ Number comparisons in worst case = height of the tree = maximum number nodes from root to leaf.

130

131

Decision Tree

Binary tree with height h has at most $2^0 + 2^1 + \dots + 2^{h-1} = 2^h - 1 < 2^h$ nodes.

$$2^h > n \Rightarrow h > \log_2 n$$

Decision tree with n node has at least height $\log_2 n$.

Number decisions = $\Omega(\log n)$.

Theorem 9

Any comparison-based search algorithm on sorted data with length n requires in the worst case $\Omega(\log n)$ comparisons.

Lower bound for Search in Unsorted Array

Theorem 10

Any comparison-based search algorithm with *unsorted* data of length n requires in the worst case $\Omega(n)$ comparisons.

132

133

Attempt

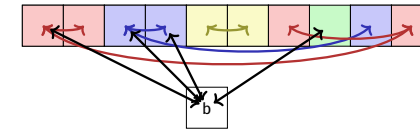
Correct?

"Proof": to find b in A , b must be compared with each of the n elements $A[i]$ ($1 \leq i \leq n$).

Wrong argument! It is still possible to compare elements within A .

134

Better Argument



- Different comparisons: Number comparisons with b : e Number comparisons without b : i
- Comparisons induce g groups. Initially $g = n$.
- To connect two groups at least one comparison is needed: $n - g \leq i$.
- At least one element per group must be compared with b .
- Number comparisons $i + e \geq n - g + g = n$. ■

135

5. Selection

The Selection Problem, Randomised Selection, Linear Worst-Case Selection [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 3.1, Cormen et al, Kap. 9]

136

The Problem of Selection

Input

- unsorted array $A = (A_1, \dots, A_n)$ with pairwise different values
- Number $1 \leq k \leq n$.

Output $A[i]$ with $|\{j : A[j] < A[i]\}| = k - 1$

Special cases

- $k = 1$: Minimum: Algorithm with n comparison operations trivial.
- $k = n$: Maximum: Algorithm with n comparison operations trivial.
- $k = \lfloor n/2 \rfloor$: Median.

137

Naive Algorithm

Repeatedly find and remove the minimum $\Theta(k \cdot n)$.
→ Median in $\Theta(n^2)$

Min and Max

❓ To separately find minimum and maximum in $(A[1], \dots, A[n])$, $2n$ comparisons are required. (How) can an algorithm with less than $2n$ comparisons for both values at a time can be found?

❗ Possible with $\frac{3}{2}n$ comparisons: compare 2 elements each and then the smaller one with min and the greater one with max.⁵

⁵An indication that the naive algorithm can be improved.

138

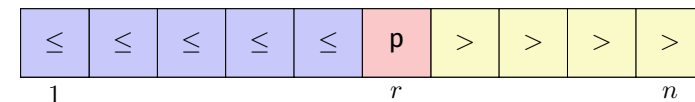
139

Better Approaches

- Sorting (covered soon): $\Theta(n \log n)$
- Use a pivot: $\Theta(n)$!

Use a pivot

1. Choose a (an arbitrary) pivot p
2. Partition A in two parts, and determine the rank of p by counting the indices i with $A[i] \leq p$.
3. Recursion on the relevant part. If $k = r$ then found.



140

141

Algorithm Partition(A, l, r, p)

Input: Array A , that contains the pivot p in $A[l, \dots, r]$ at least once.

Output: Array A partitioned in $[l, \dots, r]$ around p . Returns position of p .

```

while  $l \leq r$  do
    while  $A[l] < p$  do
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
    while  $A[r] > p$  do
         $r \leftarrow r - 1$ 
    swap( $A[l], A[r]$ )
    if  $A[l] = A[r]$  then
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
return  $l-1$ 

```

Correctness: Invariant

Invariant I : $A_i \leq p \forall i \in [0, l), A_i \geq p \forall i \in (r, n], \exists k \in [l, r] : A_k = p$.

```

while  $l \leq r$  do
    while  $A[l] < p$  do
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
    while  $A[r] > p$  do
         $r \leftarrow r - 1$ 
    swap( $A[l], A[r]$ )
    if  $A[l] = A[r]$  then
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
return  $l-1$ 

```

142

143

Correctness: progress

```

while  $l \leq r$  do
    while  $A[l] < p$  do
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
    while  $A[r] > p$  do
         $r \leftarrow r - 1$ 
    swap( $A[l], A[r]$ )
    if  $A[l] = A[r]$  then
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
return  $l-1$ 

```

progress if $A[l] < p$

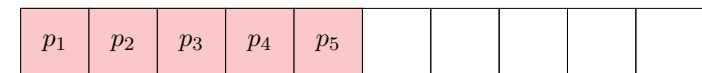
progress if $A[r] > p$

progress if $A[l] > p$ oder $A[r] < p$

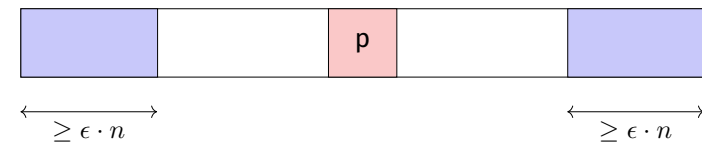
progress if $A[l] = A[r] = p$

Choice of the pivot.

The minimum is a bad pivot: worst case $\Theta(n^2)$



A good pivot has a linear number of elements on both sides.



144

145

Analysis

Partitioning with factor q ($0 < q < 1$): two groups with $q \cdot n$ and $(1 - q) \cdot n$ elements (without loss of generality $q \geq 1 - q$).

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &\leq T(q \cdot n) + c \cdot n \\
 &\leq c \cdot n + q \cdot c \cdot n + T(q^2 \cdot n) \leq \dots = c \cdot n \sum_{i=0}^{\log_q(n)-1} q^i + T(1) \\
 &\leq c \cdot n \underbrace{\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} q^i}_{\text{geom. Reihe}} + d = c \cdot n \cdot \frac{1}{1-q} + d = \mathcal{O}(n)
 \end{aligned}$$

146

Algorithm Quickselect (A, l, r, k)

Input: Array A with length n . Indices $1 \leq l \leq k \leq r \leq n$, such that for all $x \in A[l..r]$: $|\{j | A[j] \leq x\}| \geq l$ and $|\{j | A[j] \leq x\}| \leq r$.

Output: Value $x \in A[l..r]$ with $|\{j | A[j] \leq x\}| \geq k$ and $|\{j | x \leq A[j]\}| \geq n - k + 1$

```

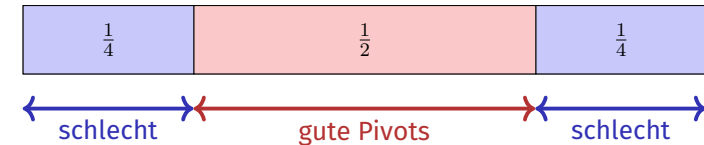
if  $l=r$  then
     $\_ \text{return } A[l];$ 
 $x \leftarrow \text{RandomPivot}(A, l, r)$ 
 $m \leftarrow \text{Partition}(A, l, r, x)$ 
if  $k < m$  then
     $\_ \text{return QuickSelect}(A, l, m-1, k)$ 
else if  $k > m$  then
     $\_ \text{return QuickSelect}(A, m+1, r, k)$ 
else
     $\_ \text{return } A[k]$ 

```

148

How can we achieve this?

Randomness to our rescue (Tony Hoare, 1961). In each step choose a random pivot.



Probability for a good pivot in one trial: $\frac{1}{2} =: \rho$.

Probability for a good pivot after k trials: $(1 - \rho)^{k-1} \cdot \rho$.

Expected number of trials: $1/\rho = 2$ (Expected value of the geometric distribution:)

147

Algorithm RandomPivot (A, l, r)

Input: Array A with length n . Indices $1 \leq l \leq r \leq n$

Output: Random "good" pivot $x \in A[l, \dots, r]$

```

repeat
    choose a random pivot  $x \in A[l..r]$ 
     $p \leftarrow l$ 
    for  $j = l$  to  $r$  do
        if  $A[j] \leq x$  then  $p \leftarrow p + 1$ 
until  $\lfloor \frac{3l+r}{4} \rfloor \leq p \leq \lceil \frac{l+3r}{4} \rceil$ 
return  $x$ 

```

This algorithm is only of theoretical interest and delivers a good pivot in 2 expected iterations. Practically, in algorithm QuickSelect a uniformly chosen random pivot can be chosen or a deterministic one such as the median of three elements.

149

Median of medians

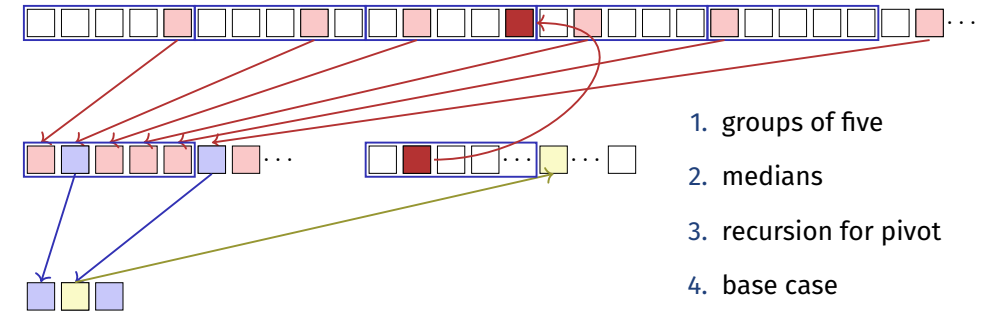
Goal: find an algorithm that even in worst case requires only linearly many steps.

Algorithm Select (k -smallest)

- Consider groups of five elements.
- Compute the median of each group (straightforward)
- Apply Select recursively on the group medians.
- Partition the array around the found median of medians. Result: i
- If $i = k$ then result. Otherwise: select recursively on the proper side.

150

Median of medians



1. groups of five
2. medians
3. recursion for pivot
4. base case
5. pivot (level 1)
6. partition (level 1)
7. median = pivot level 0
8. 2. recursion starts

151

Algorithmus MMSelect(A, l, r, k)

Input: Array A with length n with pair-wise different entries. $1 \leq l \leq k \leq r \leq n$,

$$A[i] < A[k] \forall 1 \leq i < l, A[i] > A[k] \forall r < i \leq n$$

Output: Value $x \in A$ with $|\{j | A[j] \leq x\}| = k$

$m \leftarrow \text{MMChoose}(A, l, r)$

$i \leftarrow \text{Partition}(A, l, r, m)$

if $k < i$ **then**

return MMSelect($A, l, i - 1, k$)

else if $k > i$ **then**

return MMSelect($A, i + 1, r, k$)

else

return $A[i]$

152

Algorithmus MMChoose(A, l, r)

Input: Array A with length n with pair-wise different entries. $1 \leq l \leq r \leq n$.

Output: Median m of medians

if $r - l \leq 5$ **then**

return MedianOf5($A[l, \dots, r]$)

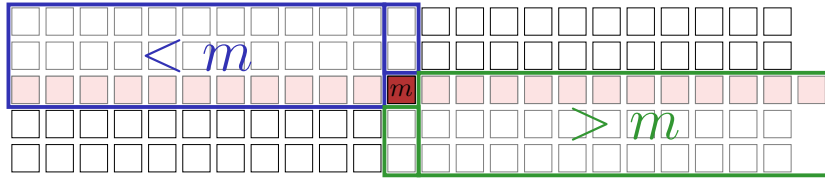
else

$A' \leftarrow \text{MedianOf5Array}(A[l, \dots, r])$

return MMSelect($A', 1, |A'|, \lfloor \frac{|A'|}{2} \rfloor$)

153

How good is this?



- Number groups of five: $\lceil \frac{n}{5} \rceil$, without median group: $\lceil \frac{n}{5} \rceil - 1$
- Minimal number groups left / right of Mediagroup $\lfloor \frac{1}{2} (\lceil \frac{n}{5} \rceil - 1) \rfloor$
- Minimal number of points less than / greater than m

$$3 \lfloor \frac{1}{2} (\lceil \frac{n}{5} \rceil - 1) \rfloor \geq 3 \lfloor \frac{1}{2} (\frac{n}{5} - 1) \rfloor \geq 3 (\frac{n}{10} - \frac{1}{2} - 1) > \frac{3n}{10} - 6$$

(Fill rest group with points from the median group)

⇒ Recursive call with maximally $\lceil \frac{7n}{10} + 6 \rceil$ elements.

154

Analysis

Recursion inequality:

$$T(n) \leq T\left(\lceil \frac{n}{5} \rceil\right) + T\left(\lceil \frac{7n}{10} + 6 \rceil\right) + d \cdot n.$$

with some constant d .

Claim:

$$T(n) = \mathcal{O}(n).$$

155

Proof

Base clause:⁶ choose c large enough such that

$$T(n) \leq c \cdot n \text{ für alle } n \leq n_0.$$

Induction hypothesis: $H(n)$

$$T(i) \leq c \cdot i \text{ für alle } i < n.$$

Induction step: $H(k)_{k < n} \rightarrow H(n)$

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq T\left(\lceil \frac{n}{5} \rceil\right) + T\left(\lceil \frac{7n}{10} + 6 \rceil\right) + d \cdot n \\ &\leq c \cdot \lceil \frac{n}{5} \rceil + c \cdot \lceil \frac{7n}{10} + 6 \rceil + d \cdot n \quad (\text{for } n > 20). \end{aligned}$$

⁶It will turn out in the induction step that the base case has to hold of some fixed $n_0 > 0$. Because an arbitrarily large value can be chosen for c and because there is a limited number of terms, this is a simple extension of the base case for $n = 1$

156

Proof

Induction step:

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\stackrel{n > 20}{\leq} c \cdot \lceil \frac{n}{5} \rceil + c \cdot \lceil \frac{7n}{10} + 6 \rceil + d \cdot n \\ &\leq c \cdot \frac{n}{5} + c + c \cdot \frac{7n}{10} + 6c + c + d \cdot n = \frac{9}{10} \cdot c \cdot n + 8c + d \cdot n. \end{aligned}$$

To show

$$\exists n_0, \exists c \quad \left| \frac{9}{10} \cdot c \cdot n + 8c + d \cdot n \leq cn \quad \forall n \geq n_0 \right|$$

thus

$$8c + d \cdot n \leq \frac{1}{10} cn \Leftrightarrow n \geq \frac{80c}{c - 10d}$$

Set, for example $c = 90d, n_0 = 91 \Rightarrow T(n) \leq cn \forall n \geq n_0$

■

157

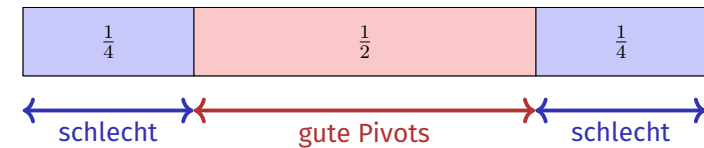
Result

Theorem 11

The k -th element of a sequence of n elements can, in the worst case, be found in $\Theta(n)$ steps.

Overview

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Repeatedly find minimum | $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ |
| 2. Sorting and choosing $A[i]$ | $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$ |
| 3. Quickselect with random pivot | $\mathcal{O}(n)$ expected |
| 4. Median of Medians (Blum) | $\mathcal{O}(n)$ worst case |



158

159

5.1 Appendix

Derivation of some mathematical formulas

[Expected value of the Geometric Distribution]

Random variable $X \in \mathbb{N}^+$ with $\mathbb{P}(X = k) = (1 - p)^{k-1} \cdot p$.

Expected value

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbb{E}(X) &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k \cdot (1 - p)^{k-1} \cdot p = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k \cdot q^{k-1} \cdot (1 - q) \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k \cdot q^{k-1} - k \cdot q^k = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (k+1) \cdot q^k - k \cdot q^k \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} q^k = \frac{1}{1 - q} = \frac{1}{p}.
 \end{aligned}$$

160

161

What do we learn today?

6. C++ advanced (I)

Repetition: Vectors, Pointers and Iterators,
Range for, Keyword auto, a Class for Vectors, Subscript-operator,
Move-construction, Iterators

- Keyword auto
- Ranged for
- Short recap of the Rule of Three
- Subscript operator
- Move Semantics, X-Values and the Rule of Five
- Custom Iterators

162

163

We look back...

```
#include <iostream>
#include <vector>
using iterator = std::vector<int>::iterator;

int main(){
    // Vector of length 10
    std::vector<int> v(10);
    // Input
    for (int i = 0; i < v.size(); ++i)
        std::cin >> v[i];
    // Output
    for (iterator it = v.begin(); it != v.end(); ++it)
        std::cout << *it << " ";
}
```

← We want to understand this in depth!

↑

Not as good as it could be!

164

6.1 Useful Tools

On our way to elegant, less complicated code.

165

auto

The keyword `auto` (from C++11):

The type of a variable is inferred from the initializer.

```
int x = 10;
auto y = x; // int
auto z = 3; // int
std::vector<double> v(5);
auto i = v[3]; // double
```

166

Range for (C++11)

```
for (range-declaration : range-expression)
    statement;
```

- range-declaration: named variable of element type specified via the sequence in range-expression
- range-expression: Expression that represents a sequence of elements via iterator pair `begin()`, `end()`, or in the form of an initializer list.

```
std::vector<double> v(5);
for (double x: v) std::cout << x; // 00000
for (int x: {1,2,5}) std::cout << x; // 125
for (double& x: v) x=5;
```

168

Slightly better...

```
#include <iostream>
#include <vector>

int main(){
    std::vector<int> v(10); // Vector of length 10

    for (int i = 0; i < v.size(); ++i)
        std::cin >> v[i];

    for (auto it = v.begin(); it != v.end(); ++it) {
        std::cout << *it << " ";
    }
}
```

167

Cool!

```
#include <iostream>
#include <vector>

int main(){
    std::vector<int> v(10); // Vector of length 10

    for (auto& x: v)
        std::cin >> x;

    for (const auto x: v)
        std::cout << x << " ";
}
```

169

6.2 Memory Allocation

Construction of a vector class

A class for (double) vectors

```
class Vector{
public:
    // constructors
    Vector(): sz{0}, elem{nullptr} {};
    Vector(std::size_t s): sz{s}, elem{new double[s]} {}
    // destructor
    ~Vector(){
        delete[] elem;
    }
    // (something is missing here)
private:
    std::size_t sz;
    double* elem;
}
```

170

For our detailed understanding

We build a vector class with the same capabilities ourselves!

On the way we learn about

- RAII (Resource Acquisition is Initialization) and move construction
- Subscript operators and other utilities
- Templates
- Exception Handling
- Functors and lambda expressions

171

Element access

```
class Vector{
    ...
    // getter. pre: 0 <= i < sz;
    double get(std::size_t i) const{
        return elem[i];
    }
    // setter. pre: 0 <= i < sz;
    void set(std::size_t i, double d){
        elem[i] = d;
    }
    // size property
    std::size_t size() const {
        return sz;
    }
}
```

```
class Vector{
public:
    Vector();
    Vector(std::size_t s);
    ~Vector();
    double get(std::size_t i) const;
    void set(std::size_t i, double d);
    std::size_t size() const;
}
```

(Vector Interface)

172

173

What's the problem here?

```
int main(){
    Vector v(32);
    for (std::size_t i = 0; i!=v.size(); ++i)
        v.set(i, i);
    Vector w = v;
    for (std::size_t i = 0; i!=w.size(); ++i)
        w.set(i, i*i);
    return 0;
}
```

```
*** Error in 'vector1': double free or corruption
(!prev): 0x000000000d23c20 ***
===== Backtrace: =====
/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(+0x777e5) [0x7fe5a5ac97e5]
...
```

```
class Vector{
public:
    Vector();
    Vector(std::size_t s);
    ~Vector();
    double get(std::size_t i) const;
    void set(std::size_t i, double d);
    std::size_t size() const;
}
```

(Vector Interface)

174

Rule of Three!

```
class Vector{
...
public:
    // copy constructor
    Vector(const Vector &v)
        : sz{v.sz}, elem{new double[v.sz]} {
        std::copy(v.elem, v.elem + v.sz, elem);
    }
}
```

```
class Vector{
public:
    Vector();
    Vector(std::size_t s);
    ~Vector();
    Vector(const Vector &v);
    double get(std::size_t i) const;
    void set(std::size_t i, double d);
    std::size_t size() const;
}
```

(Vector Interface)

175

Rule of Three!

```
class Vector{
...
    // assignment operator
    Vector& operator=(const Vector& v){
        if (v.elem == elem) return *this;
        if (elem != nullptr) delete[] elem;
        sz = v.sz;
        elem = new double[sz];
        std::copy(v.elem, v.elem+v.sz, elem);
        return *this;
    }
}
```

```
class Vector{
public:
    Vector();
    Vector(std::size_t s);
    ~Vector();
    Vector(const Vector &v);
    Vector operator=(const Vector&v);
    double get(std::size_t i) const;
    void set(std::size_t i, double d);
    std::size_t size() const;
}
```

(Vector Interface)

Now it is correct, but cumbersome.

176

Constructor Delegation

```
public:
    // copy constructor
    // (with constructor delegation)
    Vector(const Vector &v): Vector(v.sz)
    {
        std::copy(v.elem, v.elem + v.sz, elem);
    }
```

177

Copy-&-Swap Idiom

```
class Vector{
...
    // Assignment operator
    Vector& operator= (const Vector&v){
        Vector cpy(v);
        swap(cpy);
        return *this;
    }
private:
    // helper function
    void swap(Vector& v){
        std::swap(sz, v.sz);
        std::swap(elem, v.elem);
    }
}
```

copy-and-swap idiom: all members of *this are exchanged with members of cpy. When leaving operator=, cpy is cleaned up (deconstructed), while the copy of the data of v stay in *this.

178

Syntactic sugar.

Getters and setters are poor. We want a subscript (index) operator. Overloading! So?

```
class Vector{
...
    double operator[] (std::size_t pos) const{
        return elem[pos];
    }
    void operator[] (std::size_t pos, double value){
        elem[pos] = value;
    }
}
```

No!

179

Reference types!

```
class Vector{
...
    // for non-const objects
    double& operator[] (std::size_t pos){
        return elem[pos]; // return by reference!
    }
    // for const objects
    const double& operator[] (std::size_t pos) const{
        return elem[pos];
    }
}
```

180

So far so good.

```
int main(){
    Vector v(32); // constructor
    for (int i = 0; i<v.size(); ++i)
        v[i] = i; // subscript operator

    Vector w = v; // copy constructor
    for (int i = 0; i<w.size(); ++i)
        w[i] = i*i;

    const auto u = w;
    for (int i = 0; i<u.size(); ++i)
        std::cout << v[i] << ":" << u[i] << " "; // 0:0 1:1 2:4 ...
    return 0;
}
```

181

6.3 Iterators

How to support the range `for`

Range for

We wanted this:

```
Vector v = ...;
for (auto x: v)
    std::cout << x << " ";
```

In order to support this, an iterator must be provided via `begin` and `end`.

182

Iterator for the vector

```
class Vector{
...
    // Iterator
    double* begin(){
        return elem;
    }
    double* end(){
        return elem+sz;
    }
}
```

(Pointers support iteration)

183

Const Iterator for the vector

```
class Vector{
...
    // Const-Iterator
    const double* begin() const{
        return elem;
    }
    const double* end() const{
        return elem+sz;
    }
}
```

184

185

Intermediate result

```
Vector Natural(int from, int to){
    Vector v(to-from+1);
    for (auto& x: v) x = from++;
    return v;
}

int main(){
    auto v = Natural(5,12);
    for (auto x: v)
        std::cout << x << " "; // 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
    std::cout << std::endl;
        << "sum = "
        << std::accumulate(v.begin(), v.end(),0); // sum = 68
    return 0;
}
```

186

Vector Interface

```
class Vector{
public:
    Vector(); // Default Constructor
    Vector(std::size_t s); // Constructor
    ~Vector(); // Destructor
    Vector(const Vector &v); // Copy Constructor
    Vector& operator=(const Vector&v); // Assignment Operator
    double& operator[] (std::size_t pos); // Subscript operator (read/write)
    const double& operator[] (std::size_t pos) const; // Subscript operator
    std::size_t size() const;
    double* begin(); // iterator begin
    double* end(); // iterator end
    const double* begin() const; // const iterator begin
    const double* end() const; // const iterator end
}
```

187

6.4 Efficient Memory-Management*

How to avoid copies

Number copies

How often is v being copied?

```
Vector operator+ (const Vector& l, double r){
    Vector result (l); // copy of l to result
    for (std::size_t i = 0; i < l.size(); ++i)
        result[i] = l[i] + r;
    return result; // deconstruction of result after assignment
}

int main(){
    Vector v(16); // allocation of elems[16]
    v = v + 1; // copy when assigned!
    return 0; // deconstruction of v
}
```

v is copied (at least) twice

188

189

Move construction and move assignment

```
class Vector{
...
    // move constructor
    Vector (Vector&& v): Vector() {
        swap(v);
    };
    // move assignment
    Vector& operator=(Vector&& v){
        swap(v);
        return *this;
    };
}
```

190

Explanation

When the source object of an assignment will not continue existing after an assignment the compiler can use the move assignment instead of the assignment operator.⁷ Expensive copy operations are then avoided.

Number of copies in the previous example goes down to 1.

⁷Analogously so for the copy-constructor and the move constructor

Vector Interface

```
class Vector{
public:
    Vector();
    Vector(std::size_t s);
    ~Vector();
    Vector(const Vector &v);
    Vector& operator=(const Vector&v);
    Vector (Vector&& v);
    Vector& operator=(Vector&& v);
    const double& operator[] (std::size_t pos) const;
    double& operator[] (std::size_t pos);
    std::size_t size() const;
}
```

191

Illustration of the Move-Semantics

```
// nonsense implementation of a "vector" for demonstration purposes
class Vec{
public:
    Vec () {
        std::cout << "default constructor\n";
    }
    Vec (const Vec&) {
        std::cout << "copy constructor\n";
    }
    Vec& operator = (const Vec&) {
        std::cout << "copy assignment\n"; return *this;
    }
    ~Vec() {}
};
```

192

193

How many Copy Operations?

```
Vec operator + (const Vec& a, const Vec& b){
    Vec tmp = a;
    // add b to tmp
    return tmp;
}

int main (){
    Vec f;
    f = f + f + f + f;
}
```

Output
default constructor
copy constructor
copy constructor
copy constructor
copy assignment

4 copies of the vector

194

How many Copy Operations?

```
Vec operator + (const Vec& a, const Vec& b){
    Vec tmp = a;
    // add b to tmp
    return tmp;
}

int main (){
    Vec f;
    f = f + f + f + f;
}
```

Output
default constructor
copy constructor
copy constructor
copy constructor
move assignment

3 copies of the vector

196

Illustration of the Move-Semantics

```
// nonsense implementation of a "vector" for demonstration purposes
class Vec{
public:
    Vec () { std::cout << "default constructor\n";}
    Vec (const Vec&) { std::cout << "copy constructor\n";}
    Vec& operator = (const Vec&) {
        std::cout << "copy assignment\n"; return *this;}
    ~Vec() {}
    // new: move constructor and assignment
    Vec (Vec&&) {
        std::cout << "move constructor\n";}
    Vec& operator = (Vec&&) {
        std::cout << "move assignment\n"; return *this;}
};
```

195

How many Copy Operations?

```
Vec operator + (Vec a, const Vec& b){
    // add b to a
    return a;
}

int main (){
    Vec f;
    f = f + f + f + f;
}
```

Output
default constructor
copy constructor
move constructor
move constructor
move constructor
move assignment

1 copy of the vector

Explanation: move semantics are applied when an x-value (expired value) is assigned. R-value return values of a function are examples of x-values.

http://en.cppreference.com/w/cpp/language/value_category

197

How many Copy Operations?

```
void swap(Vec& a, Vec& b){
    Vec tmp = a;
    a=b;
    b=tmp;
}

int main (){
    Vec f;
    Vec g;
    swap(f,g);
}
```

Output
default constructor
default constructor
copy constructor
copy assignment
copy assignment

3 copies of the vector

Forcing x-values

```
void swap(Vec& a, Vec& b){
    Vec tmp = std::move(a);
    a=std::move(b);
    b=std::move(tmp);
}

int main (){
    Vec f;
    Vec g;
    swap(f,g);
}
```

Output
default constructor
default constructor
move constructor
move assignment
move assignment

0 copies of the vector

Explanation: With `std::move` an l-value expression can be forced into an x-value. Then move-semantics are applied.

<http://en.cppreference.com/w/cpp/utility/move>

198

199

`std::swap` & `std::move`

`std::swap` is implemented as above (using templates)

`std::move` can be used to move the elements of a container into another

```
std::move(va.begin(), va.end(), vb.begin())
```

Today's Conclusion

- Use `auto` to infer a type from the initializer.
- X-values are values where the compiler can determine that they go out of scope.
- Use move constructors in order to move X-values instead of copying.
- When you know what you are doing then you can enforce the use of X-Values.
- Subscript operators can be overloaded. In order to write, references are used.
- Behind a ranged `for` there is an iterator working.
- Iteration is supported by implementing an iterator following the syntactic convention of the standard library.

200

201

7. Sorting I

Simple Sorting

Problem

Input: An array $A = (A[1], \dots, A[n])$ with length n .

Output: a permutation A' of A , that is sorted: $A'[i] \leq A'[j]$ for all $1 \leq i \leq j \leq n$.

7.1 Simple Sorting

Selection Sort, Insertion Sort, Bubblesort [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 2.1, Cormen et al, Kap. 2.1, 2.2, Exercise 2.2-2, Problem 2-2]

Algorithm: IsSorted(A)

Input: Array $A = (A[1], \dots, A[n])$ with length n .

Output: Boolean decision “sorted” or “not sorted”

```
for  $i \leftarrow 1$  to  $n - 1$  do
    if  $A[i] > A[i + 1]$  then
        return “not sorted”;
return “sorted”;
```

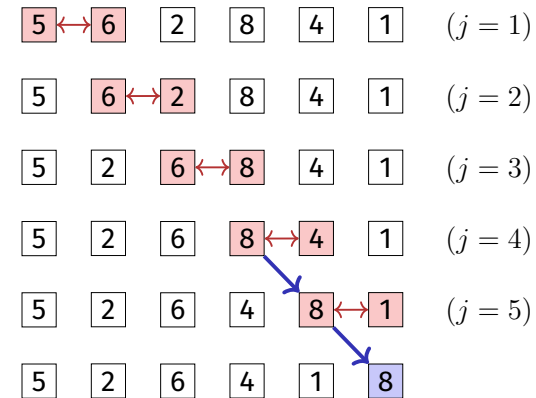
Observation

IsSorted(A): “not sorted”, if $A[i] > A[i + 1]$ for any i .

⇒ idea:

```
for  $j \leftarrow 1$  to  $n - 1$  do
    if  $A[j] > A[j + 1]$  then
        swap( $A[j], A[j + 1]$ );
```

Give it a try

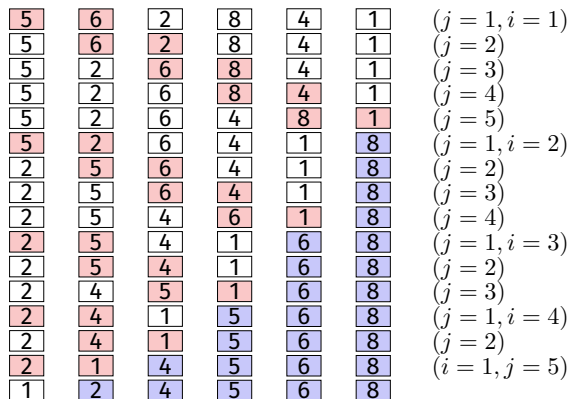


- Not sorted! 😞.
- But the greatest element moves to the right
⇒ new idea! 😊

206

207

Try it out



- Apply the procedure iteratively.
- For $A[1, \dots, n]$, then $A[1, \dots, n - 1]$, then $A[1, \dots, n - 2]$, etc.

Algorithm: Bubblesort

Input: Array $A = (A[1], \dots, A[n])$, $n \geq 0$.

Output: Sorted Array A

```
for  $i \leftarrow 1$  to  $n - 1$  do
    for  $j \leftarrow 1$  to  $n - i$  do
        if  $A[j] > A[j + 1]$  then
            swap( $A[j], A[j + 1]$ );
```

208

209

Analysis

Number key comparisons $\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} (n-i) = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} = \Theta(n^2)$.

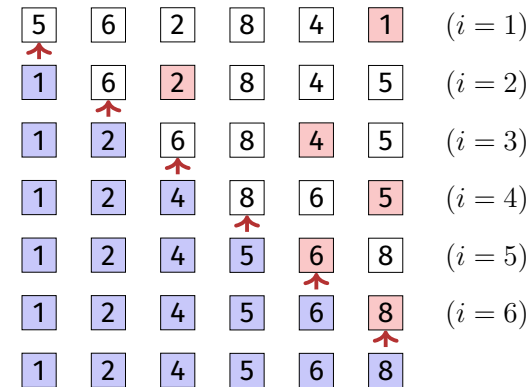
Number swaps in the worst case: $\Theta(n^2)$

What is the worst case?

If A is sorted in decreasing order.

210

Selection Sort



- Selection of the smallest element by search in the unsorted part $A[i..n]$ of the array.
- Swap the smallest element with the first element of the unsorted part.
- Unsorted part decreases in size by one element ($i \rightarrow i + 1$). Repeat until all is sorted. ($i = n$)

211

Algorithm: Selection Sort

Input: Array $A = (A[1], \dots, A[n])$, $n \geq 0$.

Output: Sorted Array A

for $i \leftarrow 1$ **to** $n - 1$ **do**

$p \leftarrow i$

for $j \leftarrow i + 1$ **to** n **do**

if $A[j] < A[p]$ **then**

$p \leftarrow j$;

 swap($A[i]$, $A[p]$)

Analysis

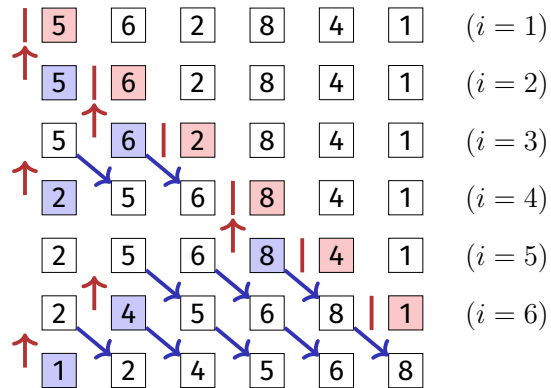
Number comparisons in worst case: $\Theta(n^2)$.

Number swaps in the worst case: $n - 1 = \Theta(n)$

212

213

Insertion Sort



- Iterative procedure:
 $i = 1 \dots n$
- Determine insertion position for element i .
- Insert element i array block movement potentially required

Insertion Sort

What is the disadvantage of this algorithm compared to sorting by selection?

Many element movements in the worst case.

What is the advantage of this algorithm compared to selection sort?

The search domain (insertion interval) is already sorted. Consequently: binary search possible.

214

215

Algorithm: Insertion Sort

Input: Array $A = (A[1], \dots, A[n])$, $n \geq 0$.

Output: Sorted Array A

for $i \leftarrow 2$ **to** n **do**

$x \leftarrow A[i]$

$p \leftarrow \text{BinarySearch}(A, 1, i - 1, x)$; // Smallest $p \in [1, i]$ with $A[p] \geq x$

for $j \leftarrow i - 1$ **downto** p **do**

$A[j + 1] \leftarrow A[j]$

$A[p] \leftarrow x$

Analysis

Number comparisons in the worst case:

$\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} a \cdot \log k = a \log((n-1)!) \in \Theta(n \log n)$.

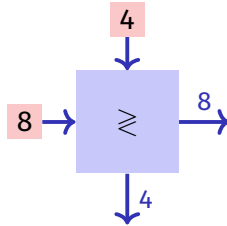
Number swaps in the worst case $\sum_{k=2}^n (k-1) \in \Theta(n^2)$

216

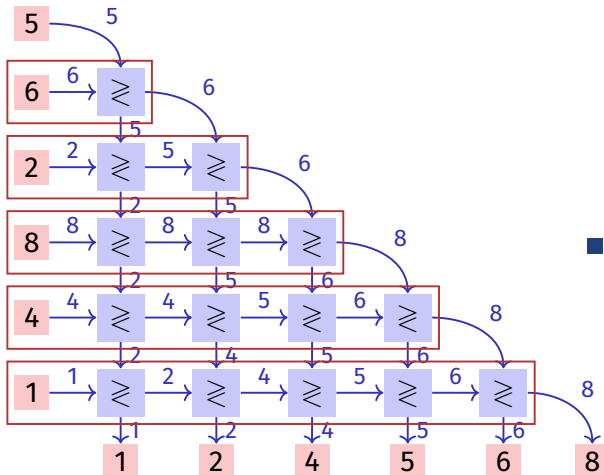
217

Different point of view

Sorting node:

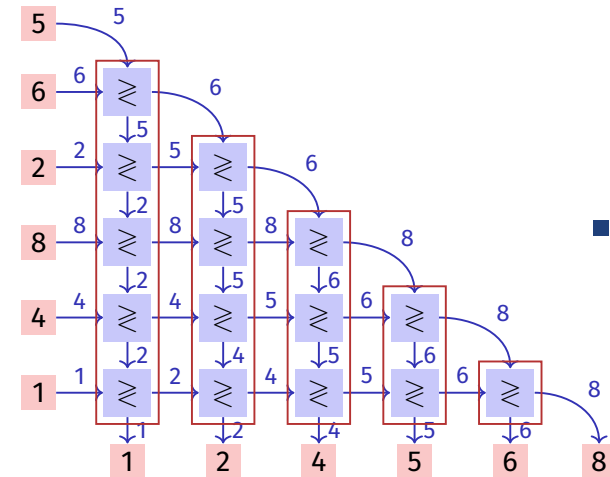


Different point of view



■ Like insertion sort

Different point of view



■ Like selection sort [and like Bubblesort]

Conclusion

In a certain sense, Selection Sort, Bubble Sort and Insertion Sort provide the same kind of sort strategy. Will be made more precise.⁸

⁸In the part about parallel sorting networks. For the sequential code of course the observations as described above still hold.

Shellsort (Donald Shell 1959)

Intuition: moving elements far apart takes many steps in the naive methods from above

Insertion sort on subsequences of the form $(A_{k \cdot i})$ ($i \in \mathbb{N}$) with decreasing distances k . Last considered distance must be $k = 1$.

Worst-case performance critically depends on the chosen subsequences

- Original concept with sequence 1, 2, 4, 8, ..., 2^k . Running time: $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$
- Sequence 1, 3, 7, 15, ..., 2^{k-1} (Hibbard 1963). $\mathcal{O}(n^{3/2})$
- Sequence 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, ..., $2^p 3^q$ (Pratt 1971). $\mathcal{O}(n \log^2 n)$

222

8. Sorting II

Mergesort, Quicksort

224

Shellsort

9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
2	8	7	6	5	4	3	9	1	0	insertion sort, $k = 7$
2	1	7	6	5	4	3	9	8	0	
2	1	0	6	5	4	3	9	8	7	
2	1	0	3	5	4	6	9	8	7	insertion sort, $k = 3$
2	1	0	3	5	4	6	9	8	7	
2	1	0	3	5	4	6	9	8	7	
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	insertion sort, $k = 1$

223

8.1 Mergesort

[Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 2.4, Cormen et al, Kap. 2.3],

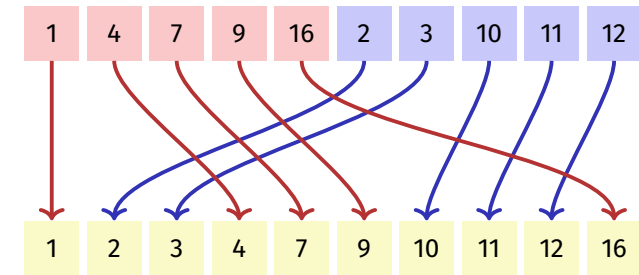
225

Mergesort

Divide and Conquer!

- Assumption: two halves of the array A are already sorted.
- Minimum of A can be evaluated with two comparisons.
- Iteratively: merge the two presorted halves of A in $\mathcal{O}(n)$.

Merge



226

227

Algorithm Merge(A, l, m, r)

Input: Array A with length n , indexes $1 \leq l \leq m \leq r \leq n$.
 $A[l, \dots, m]$, $A[m+1, \dots, r]$ sorted

Output: $A[l, \dots, r]$ sorted

```

1  $B \leftarrow \text{new Array}(r - l + 1)$ 
2  $i \leftarrow l; j \leftarrow m + 1; k \leftarrow 1$ 
3 while  $i \leq m$  and  $j \leq r$  do
4   if  $A[i] \leq A[j]$  then  $B[k] \leftarrow A[i]; i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
5   else  $B[k] \leftarrow A[j]; j \leftarrow j + 1$ 
6    $k \leftarrow k + 1;$ 
7 while  $i \leq m$  do  $B[k] \leftarrow A[i]; i \leftarrow i + 1; k \leftarrow k + 1$ 
8 while  $j \leq r$  do  $B[k] \leftarrow A[j]; j \leftarrow j + 1; k \leftarrow k + 1$ 
9 for  $k \leftarrow l$  to  $r$  do  $A[k] \leftarrow B[k - l + 1]$ 
  
```

228

Correctness

Hypothesis: after k iterations of the loop in line 3 $B[1, \dots, k]$ is sorted and $B[k] \leq A[i]$, if $i \leq m$ and $B[k] \leq A[j]$ if $j \leq r$.

Proof by induction:

Base case: the empty array $B[1, \dots, 0]$ is trivially sorted.

Induction step ($k \rightarrow k + 1$):

- wlog $A[i] \leq A[j]$, $i \leq m, j \leq r$.
- $B[1, \dots, k]$ is sorted by hypothesis and $B[k] \leq A[i]$.
- After $B[k+1] \leftarrow A[i]$ $B[1, \dots, k+1]$ is sorted.
- $B[k+1] = A[i] \leq A[i+1]$ (if $i+1 \leq m$) and $B[k+1] \leq A[j]$ if $j \leq r$.
- $k \leftarrow k + 1, i \leftarrow i + 1$: Statement holds again.

229

Analysis (Merge)

Lemma 12

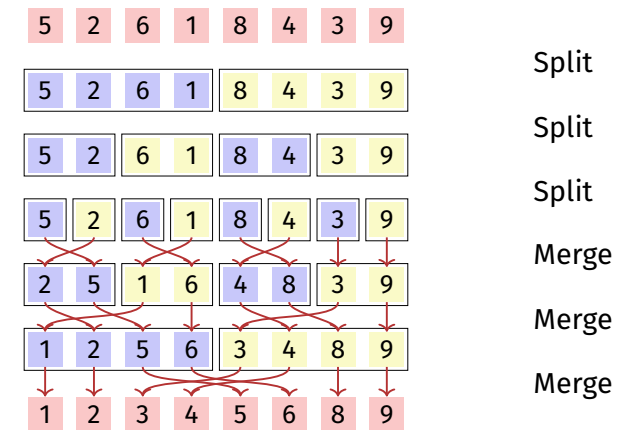
If: array A with length n , indexes $1 \leq l < r \leq n$. $m = \lfloor (l+r)/2 \rfloor$ and $A[l, \dots, m]$, $A[m+1, \dots, r]$ sorted.

Then: in the call of $\text{Merge}(A, l, m, r)$ a number of $\Theta(r-l)$ key movements and comparisons are executed.

Proof: straightforward (Inspect the algorithm and count the operations.)

230

Mergesort



231

Algorithm (recursive 2-way) $\text{Mergesort}(A, l, r)$

Input: Array A with length n . $1 \leq l \leq r \leq n$

Output: $A[l, \dots, r]$ sorted.

if $l < r$ **then**

```

     $m \leftarrow \lfloor (l+r)/2 \rfloor$       // middle position
     $\text{Mergesort}(A, l, m)$       // sort lower half
     $\text{Mergesort}(A, m+1, r)$     // sort higher half
     $\text{Merge}(A, l, m, r)$       // Merge subsequences

```

232

Analysis

Recursion equation for the number of comparisons and key movements:

$$T(n) = T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + T\left(\left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor\right) + \Theta(n) \in \Theta(n \log n)$$

233

Algorithm StraightMergesort(A)

Avoid recursion: merge sequences of length 1, 2, 4, ... directly

Input: Array A with length n

Output: Array A sorted

$length \leftarrow 1$

```
while length < n do           // Iterate over lengths  $n$ 
     $r \leftarrow 0$ 
    while  $r + length < n$  do // Iterate over subsequences
         $l \leftarrow r + 1$ 
         $m \leftarrow l + length - 1$ 
         $r \leftarrow \min(m + length, n)$ 
        Merge( $A, l, m, r$ )
    length  $\leftarrow length \cdot 2$ 
```

Analysis

Like the recursive variant, the straight 2-way mergesort always executes a number of $\Theta(n \log n)$ key comparisons and key movements.

234

235

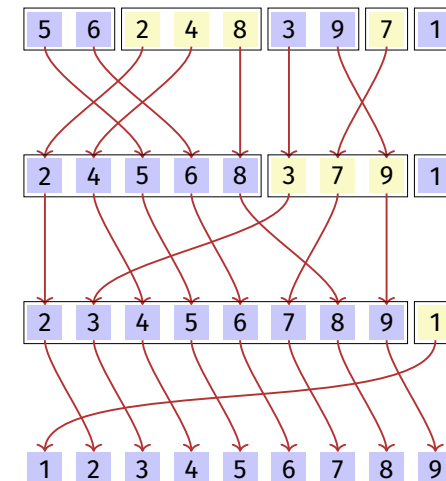
Natural 2-way mergesort

Observation: the variants above do not make use of any presorting and always execute $\Theta(n \log n)$ memory movements.

How can partially presorted arrays be sorted better?

🕒 Recursive merging of previously sorted parts (*runs*) of A .

Natural 2-way mergesort



236

237

Algorithm NaturalMergesort(A)

Input: Array A with length $n > 0$

Output: Array A sorted

```
repeat
   $r \leftarrow 0$ 
  while  $r < n$  do
     $l \leftarrow r + 1$ 
     $m \leftarrow l$ ; while  $m < n$  and  $A[m+1] \geq A[m]$  do  $m \leftarrow m + 1$ 
    if  $m < n$  then
       $r \leftarrow m + 1$ ; while  $r < n$  and  $A[r+1] \geq A[r]$  do  $r \leftarrow r + 1$ 
      Merge( $A, l, m, r$ );
    else
       $r \leftarrow n$ 
until  $l = 1$ 
```

238

8.2 Quicksort

[Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 2.2, Cormen et al, Kap. 7]

240

Analysis

Is it also asymptotically better than StraightMergesort on average?

⌚ No. Given the assumption of pairwise distinct keys, on average there are $n/2$ positions i with $k_i > k_{i+1}$, i.e. $n/2$ runs. Only one iteration is saved on average.

Natural mergesort executes in the worst case and on average a number of $\Theta(n \log n)$ comparisons and memory movements.

239

Quicksort

What is the disadvantage of Mergesort?

Requires additional $\Theta(n)$ storage for merging.

How could we reduce the merge costs?

Make sure that the left part contains only smaller elements than the right part.

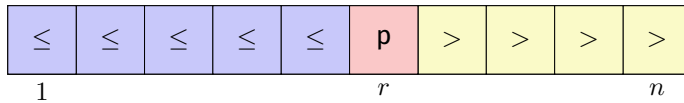
How?

Pivot and Partition!

241

Use a pivot

1. Choose a (an arbitrary) pivot p
2. Partition A in two parts, one part L with the elements with $A[i] \leq p$ and another part R with $A[i] > p$
3. Quicksort: Recursion on parts L and R



Algorithm Partition(A, l, r, p)

Input: Array A , that contains the pivot p in $A[l, \dots, r]$ at least once.

Output: Array A partitioned in $[l, \dots, r]$ around p . Returns position of p .

```

while  $l \leq r$  do
    while  $A[l] < p$  do
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
    while  $A[r] > p$  do
         $r \leftarrow r - 1$ 
    swap( $A[l], A[r]$ )
    if  $A[l] = A[r]$  then
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
return  $l-1$ 

```

242

243

Algorithm Quicksort(A, l, r)

Input: Array A with length n . $1 \leq l \leq r \leq n$.

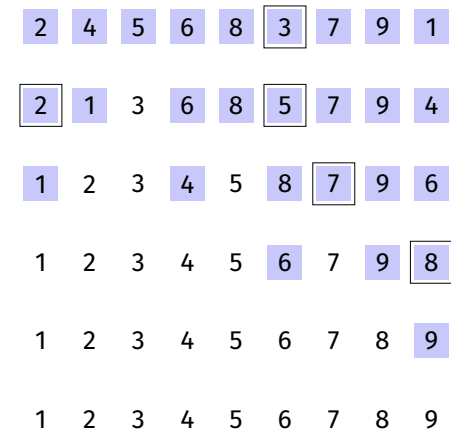
Output: Array A , sorted in $A[l, \dots, r]$.

```

if  $l < r$  then
    Choose pivot  $p \in A[l, \dots, r]$ 
     $k \leftarrow \text{Partition}(A, l, r, p)$ 
    Quicksort( $A, l, k - 1$ )
    Quicksort( $A, k + 1, r$ )

```

Quicksort (arbitrary pivot)



244

245

Analysis: number comparisons

Worst case. Pivot = min or max; number comparisons:

$$T(n) = T(n-1) + c \cdot n, \quad T(1) = d \quad \Rightarrow \quad T(n) \in \Theta(n^2)$$

Analysis: number swaps

Result of a call to partition (pivot 3):

2 1 3 6 8 5 7 9 4

❓ How many swaps have taken place?

❗ 2. The maximum number of swaps is given by the number of keys in the smaller part.

246

247

Analysis: number swaps

Thought experiment

- Each key from the smaller part pays a coin when it is being swapped.
- After a key has paid a coin the domain containing the key decreases to half its previous size.
- Every key needs to pay at most $\log n$ coins. But there are only n keys.

Consequence: there are $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$ key swaps in the worst case.

Randomized Quicksort

Despite the worst case running time of $\Theta(n^2)$, quicksort is used practically very often.

Reason: quadratic running time unlikely provided that the choice of the pivot and the pre-sorting are not very disadvantageous.

Avoidance: randomly choose pivot. Draw uniformly from $[l, r]$.

248

249

Analysis (randomized quicksort)

Expected number of compared keys with input length n :

$$T(n) = (n-1) + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n (T(k-1) + T(n-k)), \quad T(0) = T(1) = 0$$

Claim $T(n) \leq 4n \log n$.

Proof by induction:

Base case straightforward for $n = 0$ (with $0 \log 0 := 0$) and for $n = 1$.

Hypothesis: $T(n) \leq 4n \log n$ for some n .

Induction step: $(n-1 \rightarrow n)$

Analysis (randomized quicksort)

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= n-1 + \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} T(k) \stackrel{H}{\leq} n-1 + \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 4k \log k \\ &= n-1 + \sum_{k=1}^{n/2} 4k \underbrace{\log k}_{\leq \log n-1} + \sum_{k=n/2+1}^{n-1} 4k \underbrace{\log k}_{\leq \log n} \\ &\leq n-1 + \frac{8}{n} \left((\log n - 1) \sum_{k=1}^{n/2} k + \log n \sum_{k=n/2+1}^{n-1} k \right) \\ &= n-1 + \frac{8}{n} \left((\log n) \cdot \frac{n(n-1)}{2} - \frac{n}{4} \left(\frac{n}{2} + 1 \right) \right) \\ &= 4n \log n - 4 \log n - 3 \leq 4n \log n \end{aligned}$$

250

251

Analysis (randomized quicksort)

Theorem 13

On average randomized quicksort requires $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$ comparisons.

Practical Considerations

Worst case recursion depth $n-1$ ⁹. Then also a memory consumption of $\mathcal{O}(n)$.

Can be avoided: recursion only on the smaller part. Then guaranteed $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$ worst case recursion depth and memory consumption.

⁹stack overflow possible!

252

253

Quicksort with logarithmic memory consumption

Input: Array A with length n . $1 \leq l \leq r \leq n$.

Output: Array A , sorted between l and r .

while $l < r$ **do**

 Choose pivot $p \in A[l, \dots, r]$

$k \leftarrow \text{Partition}(A, l, r, p)$

if $k - l < r - k$ **then**

 Quicksort($A[l, \dots, k - 1]$)

$l \leftarrow k + 1$

else

 Quicksort($A[k + 1, \dots, r]$)

$r \leftarrow k - 1$

The call of Quicksort($A[l, \dots, r]$) in the original algorithm has moved to iteration (tail recursion!); the if-statement became a while-statement.

254

Practical Considerations.

- Practically the pivot is often the median of three elements. For example: Median3($A[l]$, $A[r]$, $A[\lfloor l + r/2 \rfloor]$).
- There is a variant of quicksort that requires only constant storage. Idea: store the old pivot at the position of the new pivot.
- Complex divide-and-conquer algorithms often use a trivial ($\Theta(n^2)$) algorithm as base case to deal with small problem sizes.

255

8.3 Appendix

Derivation of some mathematical formulas

$$\log n! \in \Theta(n \log n)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \log n! &= \sum_{i=1}^n \log i \leq \sum_{i=1}^n \log n = n \log n \\ \sum_{i=1}^n \log i &= \sum_{i=1}^{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor} \log i + \sum_{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor + 1}^n \log i \\ &\geq \sum_{i=2}^{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor} \log 2 + \sum_{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor + 1}^n \log \frac{n}{2} \\ &= (\underbrace{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}_{> n/2 - 1} - 2 + 1) + (\underbrace{n - \lfloor n/2 \rfloor}_{\geq n/2})(\log n - 1) \\ &> \frac{n}{2} \log n - 2. \end{aligned}$$

256

257

$$[n! \in o(n^n)]$$

$$\begin{aligned} n \log n &\geq \sum_{i=1}^{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor} \log 2i + \sum_{i=\lfloor n/2 \rfloor + 1}^n \log i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \log i + \left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor \log 2 \\ &> \sum_{i=1}^n \log i + n/2 - 1 = \log n! + n/2 - 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} n^n &= 2^{n \log_2 n} \geq 2^{\log_2 n!} \cdot 2^{n/2} \cdot 2^{-1} = n! \cdot 2^{n/2-1} \\ \Rightarrow \frac{n!}{n^n} &\leq 2^{-n/2+1} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0 \Rightarrow n! \in o(n^n) = \mathcal{O}(n^n) \setminus \Omega(n^n) \end{aligned}$$

258

[Ratio Test]

Ratio test for a sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$: If $\frac{f_{n+1}}{f_n} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} \lambda$, then the sequence f_n and the series $\sum_{i=1}^n f_i$

- converge, if $\lambda < 1$ and
- diverge, if $\lambda > 1$.

$$[\text{Even } n! \in o((n/c)^n) \forall 0 < c < e]$$

Konvergenz oder Divergenz von $f_n = \frac{n!}{(n/c)^n}$.

Ratio Test

$$\frac{f_{n+1}}{f_n} = \frac{(n+1)!}{\left(\frac{n+1}{c}\right)^{n+1}} \cdot \frac{\left(\frac{n}{c}\right)^n}{n!} = c \cdot \left(\frac{n}{n+1}\right)^n \rightarrow c \cdot \frac{1}{e} \leq 1 \text{ if } c \leq e$$

because $\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n \rightarrow e$. Even the series $\sum_{i=1}^n f_n$ converges / diverges for $c \leq e$.

f_n diverges for $c = e$, because (Stirling): $n! \approx \sqrt{2\pi n} \left(\frac{n}{e}\right)^n$.

259

[Ratio Test Derivation]

Ratio test is implied by Geometric Series

$$S_n(r) := \sum_{i=0}^n r^i = \frac{1 - r^{n+1}}{1 - r}.$$

converges for $n \rightarrow \infty$ if and only if $-1 < r < 1$.

Let $0 \leq \lambda < 1$:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall \varepsilon > 0 \exists n_0 : f_{n+1}/f_n < \lambda + \varepsilon \forall n \geq n_0 \\ \Rightarrow \exists \varepsilon > 0, \exists n_0 : f_{n+1}/f_n \leq \mu < 1 \forall n \geq n_0 \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\sum_{n=n_0}^{\infty} f_n \leq f_{n_0} \cdot \sum_{n=n_0}^{\infty} \mu^{n-n_0} \text{ konvergiert.}$$

(Analogously for divergence)

260

261

9. Sorting III

Lower bounds for the comparison based sorting, radix- and bucket-sort

262

Lower bound for sorting

Up to here: worst case sorting takes $\Omega(n \log n)$ steps.

Is there a better way? No:

Theorem 14

Sorting procedures that are based on comparison require in the worst case and on average at least $\Omega(n \log n)$ key comparisons.

264

9.1 Lower bounds for comparison based sorting

[Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 2.8, Cormen et al, Kap. 8.1]

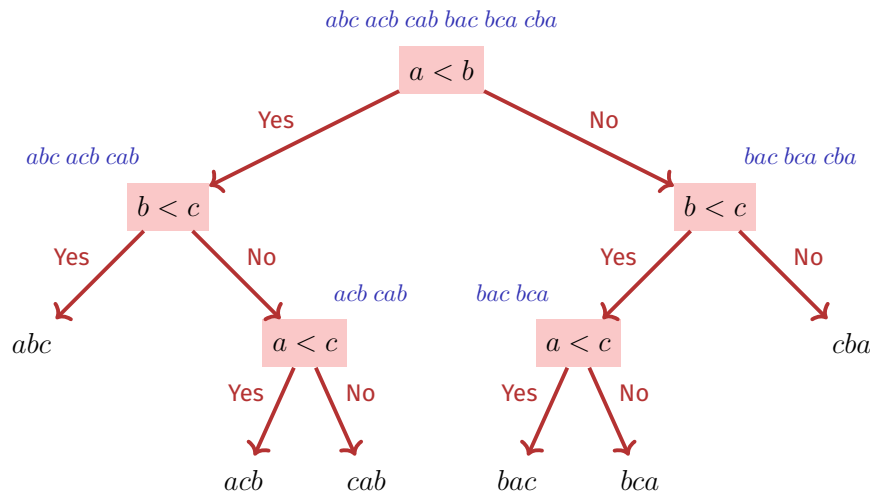
263

Comparison based sorting

- An algorithm must identify the correct one of $n!$ permutations of an array $(A_i)_{i=1,\dots,n}$.
- At the beginning the algorithm knows nothing about the array structure.
- We consider the knowledge gain of the algorithm in the form of a decision tree:
 - Nodes contain the remaining possibilities.
 - Edges contain the decisions.

265

Decision tree



266

Decision tree

A binary tree with L leaves provides $K = L - 1$ inner nodes.¹⁰

The height of a binary tree with L leaves is at least $\log_2 L$. \Rightarrow The height of the decision tree $h \geq \log n! \in \Omega(n \log n)$.

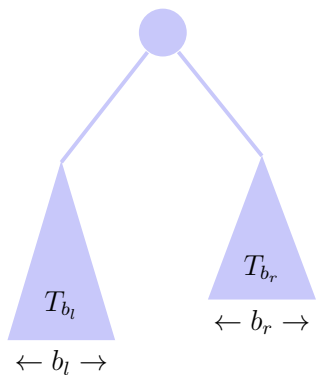
Thus the length of the longest path in the decision tree $\in \Omega(n \log n)$.

Remaining to show: mean length $M(n)$ of a path $M(n) \in \Omega(n \log n)$.

¹⁰Proof: start with empty tree ($K = 0, L = 1$). Each added node replaces a leaf by two leaves, i.e. $K \rightarrow K + 1 \Rightarrow L \rightarrow L + 1$.

267

Average lower bound



- Decision tree T_n with n leaves, average height of a leaf $m(T_n)$
- Assumption $m(T_n) \geq \log n$ not for all n .
- Choose smallest b with $m(T_b) < \log b \Rightarrow b \geq 2$
- $b_l + b_r = b$ with $b_l > 0$ and $b_r > 0 \Rightarrow b_l < b, b_r < b \Rightarrow m(T_{b_l}) \geq \log b_l$ und $m(T_{b_r}) \geq \log b_r$

268

Average lower bound

Average height of a leaf:

$$\begin{aligned} m(T_b) &= \frac{b_l}{b}(m(T_{b_l}) + 1) + \frac{b_r}{b}(m(T_{b_r}) + 1) \\ &\geq \frac{1}{b}(b_l(\log b_l + 1) + b_r(\log b_r + 1)) = \frac{1}{b}(b_l \log 2b_l + b_r \log 2b_r) \\ &\geq \frac{1}{b}(b \log b) = \log b. \end{aligned}$$

Contradiction. ■

The last inequality holds because $f(x) = x \log x$ is convex ($f''(x) = 1/x > 0$) and for a convex function it holds that $f((x+y)/2) \leq 1/2f(x) + 1/2f(y)$ ($x = 2b_l, y = 2b_r$).¹¹ Enter $x = 2b_l, y = 2b_r$, and $b_l + b_r = b$.

¹¹generally $f(\lambda x + (1 - \lambda)y) \leq \lambda f(x) + (1 - \lambda)f(y)$ for $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

269

9.2 Radixsort and Bucketsort

Radixsort, Bucketsort [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 2.5, Cormen et al, Kap. 8.3]

Assumptions

Assumption: keys representable as words from an alphabet containing m elements.

Examples

$m = 10$	decimal numbers	$183 = 183_{10}$
$m = 2$	dual numbers	101_2
$m = 16$	hexadecimal numbers	$A0_{16}$
$m = 26$	words	"INFORMATIK"

m is called the radix of the representation.

Radix Sort

Sorting based on comparison: comparable keys ($<$ or $>$, often $=$). No further assumptions.

Different idea: use more information about the keys.

Assumptions

- keys = m -adic numbers with same length.
- Procedure z for the extraction of digit k in $\mathcal{O}(1)$ steps.

Example

$$\begin{aligned}z_{10}(0, 85) &= 5 \\z_{10}(1, 85) &= 8 \\z_{10}(2, 85) &= 0\end{aligned}$$

Radix-Exchange-Sort

Keys with radix 2.

Observation: if for some $k \geq 0$:

$$z_2(i, x) = z_2(i, y) \text{ for all } i > k$$

and

$$z_2(k, x) < z_2(k, y),$$

then it holds that $x < y$.

Radix-Exchange-Sort

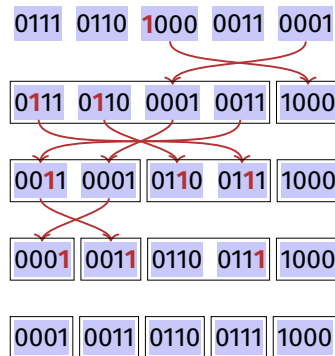
Idea:

- Start with a maximal k .
- Binary partition the data sets with $z_2(k, \cdot) = 0$ vs. $z_2(k, \cdot) = 1$ like with quicksort.
- $k \leftarrow k - 1$.

274

275

Radix-Exchange-Sort



276

Algorithm RadixExchangeSort(A, l, r, b)

Input: Array A with length n , left and right bounds $1 \leq l \leq r \leq n$, bit position b

Output: Array A , sorted in the domain $[l, r]$ by bits $[0, \dots, b]$.

```

if  $l < r$  and  $b \geq 0$  then
     $i \leftarrow l - 1$ 
     $j \leftarrow r + 1$ 
    repeat
        repeat  $i \leftarrow i + 1$  until  $z_2(b, A[i]) = 1$  or  $i \geq j$ 
        repeat  $j \leftarrow j - 1$  until  $z_2(b, A[j]) = 0$  or  $i \geq j$ 
        if  $i < j$  then swap( $A[i], A[j]$ )
    until  $i \geq j$ 
    RadixExchangeSort( $A, l, i - 1, b - 1$ )
    RadixExchangeSort( $A, j, r, b - 1$ )
    
```

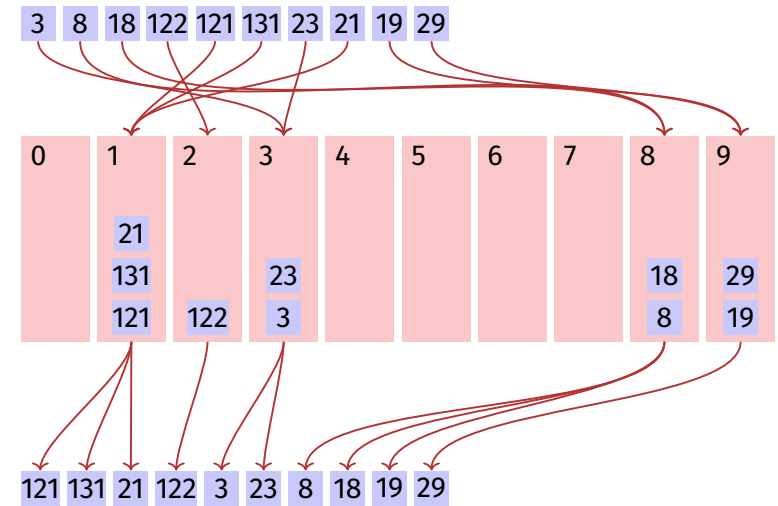
277

Analysis

RadixExchangeSort provides recursion with maximal recursion depth = maximal number of digits p .

Worst case run time $\mathcal{O}(p \cdot n)$.

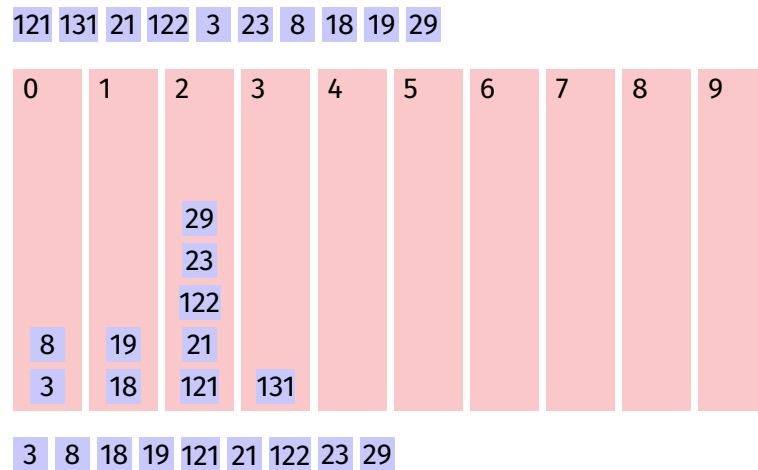
Bucket Sort



278

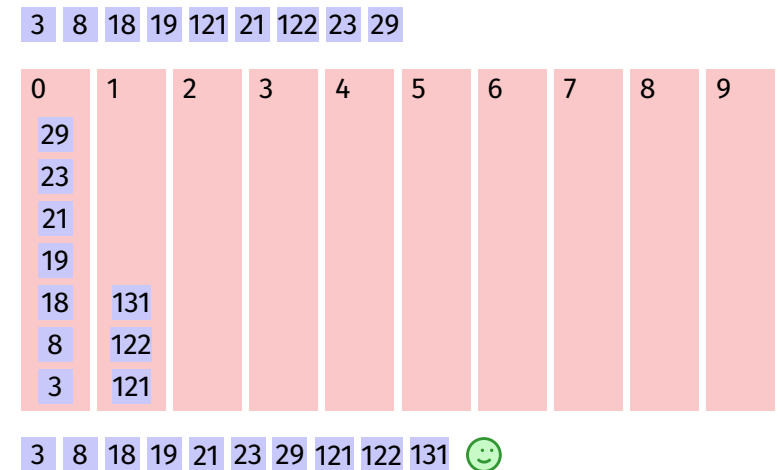
279

Bucket Sort



280

Bucket Sort



281

implementation details

Bucket size varies greatly. Possibilities

- Linked list or dynamic array for each digit.
- One array of length n . compute offsets for each digit in the first iteration.

Assumptions: Input length n , Number bits / integer: k , Number Buckets: 2^b

Asymptotic running time $\mathcal{O}(\frac{k}{b} \cdot (n + 2^b))$.

For Example: $k = 32$, $2^b = 256$: $\frac{k}{b} \cdot (n + 2^b) = 4n + 1024$.

282

Bucket Sort – Different Assumption

Hypothesis: uniformly distributed data e.g. from $[0, 1)$

Input: Array A with length n , $A_i \in [0, 1)$, constant $M \in \mathbb{N}^+$

Output: Sorted array

$k \leftarrow \lceil n/M \rceil$

$B \leftarrow$ new array of k empty lists

for $i \leftarrow 1$ **to** n **do**

$B[\lfloor A_i \cdot k \rfloor].\text{append}(A[i])$

for $i \leftarrow 1$ **to** k **do**

$\text{sort } B[i]$ // e.g. insertion sort, running time $\mathcal{O}(M^2)$

return $B[0] \circ B[1] \circ \dots \circ B[k]$ // concatenated

Expected asymptotic running time $\mathcal{O}(n)$ (Proof in Cormen et al, Kap. 8.4)

283

What do we learn today?

- templates of classes
- function templates
- Smart Pointers

10. C++ advanced (II): Templates

284

285

Motivation

Goal: generic vector class and functionality.

```
Vector<double> vd(10);
Vector<int> vi(10);
Vector<char> vi(20);

auto nd = vd * vd; // norm (vector of double)
auto ni = vi * vi; // norm (vector of int)
```

286

Types as Template Parameters

1. In the concrete implementation of a class replace the type that should become generic (in our example: `double`) by a representative element, e.g. `T`.
2. Put in front of the class the construct `template<typename T>` Replace `T` by the representative name).

The construct `template<typename T>` can be understood as “for all types `T`”.

287

Types as Template Parameters

```
template <typename ElementType>
class Vector{
    std::size_t size;
    ElementType* elem;
public:
    ...
    Vector(std::size_t s):
        size{s},
        elem{new ElementType[s]}{}
    ...
    ElementType& operator[](std::size_t pos){
        return elem[pos];
    }
    ...
}
```

288

Template Instances

`Vector<typeName>` generates a type instance `Vector` with `ElementType=typeName`.

Notation: **Instantiation**

```
Vector<double> x;           // vector of double
Vector<int> y;              // vector of int
Vector<Vector<double>> x;    // vector of vector of double
```

289

Type-checking

Templates are basically replacement rules at instantiation time and during compilation. The compiler always checks as little as necessary and as much as possible.

290

Example

```
template <typename T>
class Pair{
    T left; T right;
public:
    Pair(T l, T r):left{l}, right{r}{}
    T min(){
        return left < right ? left : right;
    }
};

Pair<int> a(10,20); // ok
auto m = a.min(); // ok
Pair<Pair<int>> b(a,Pair<int>(20,30)); // ok
auto n = b.min(); // no match for operator< !
```

291

Generic Programming

Generic components should be developed rather as a **generalization of one or more examples** than from first principles.

```
template <typename T>
class Vector{
public:
    Vector();
    Vector(std::size_t);
    ~Vector();
    Vector(const Vector&);
    Vector& operator=(const Vector&);
    Vector (Vector&&);
    Vector& operator=(Vector&&);
    const T& operator[] (std::size_t) const;
    T& operator[] (std::size_t);
    std::size_t size() const;
    T* begin();
    T* end();
    const T* begin() const;
    const T* end() const;
}
```

292

Function Templates

1. To make a concrete implementation generic, replace the specific type (e.g. int) with a name, e.g. T,
2. Put in front of the function the construct `template<typename T>` (Replace T by the chosen name)

293

Function Templates

```
template <typename T>
void swap(T& x, T&y){
    T temp = x;
    x = y;
    y = temp;
}
```

The actual parameters' types determine the version of the function that is (compiled) and used:

```
int x=5;
int y=6;
swap(x,y); // calls swap with T=int
```

294

.. also with operators

```
template <typename T>
class Pair{
    T left; T right;
public:
    Pair(T l, T r):left{l}, right{r}{}
    T min(){ return left < right? left: right; }
    std::ostream& print (std::ostream& os) const{
        return os << "("<< left << "," << right<< ")";
    }
};

template <typename T>
std::ostream& operator<< (std::ostream& os, const Pair<T>& pair){
    return pair.print(os);
}
```

296

Safety

```
template <typename T>
void swap(T& x, T&y){
    T temp = x;
    x = y;
    y = temp;
}
```

An inadmissible version of the function is not generated:

```
int x=5;
double y=6;
swap(x,y); // error: no matching function for ...
```

295

Useful!

```
// Output of an arbitrary container
template <typename T>
void output(const T& t){
    for (auto x: t)
        std::cout << x << " ";
    std::cout << "\n";
}

int main(){
    std::vector<int> v={1,2,3};
    output(v); // 1 2 3
}
```

297

Explicit Type

```
// input of an arbitrary pair
template <typename T>
Pair<T> read(){
    T left;
    T right;
    std::cin << left << right;
    return Pair<T>(left,right);
}
...
```

```
auto p = read<double>();
```

If the type of a template instantiation cannot be inferred, it has to be provided explicitly.

298

Powerful!

```
template <typename T> // square number
T sq(T x){
    return x*x;
}
template <typename Container, typename F>
void apply(Container& c, F f){ // x <- f(x) forall x in c
    for(auto& x: c)
        x = f(x);
}
int main(){
    std::vector<int> v={1,2,3};
    apply(v,sq<int>);
    output(v); // 1 4 9
}
```

299

Specialization

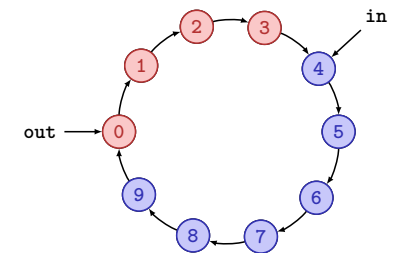
```
template <>
class Pair<bool>{
    short both;
public:
    Pair(bool l, bool r):both{(l?1:0) + (r?2:0)} {};
    std::ostream& print (std::ostream& os) const{
        return os << "(" << both % 2 << "," << both / 2 << ")";
    }
};
```

```
Pair<int> i(10,20); // ok -- generic template
std::cout << i << std::endl; // (10,20);
Pair<bool> b(true, false); // ok -- special bool version
std::cout << b << std::endl; // (1,0)
```

300

Template Parameterization with Values

```
template <typename T, int size>
class CircularBuffer{
    T buf[size] ;
    int in; int out;
public:
    CircularBuffer():in{0},out{0}{};
    bool empty(){
        return in == out;
    }
    bool full(){
        return (in + 1) % size == out;
    }
    void put(T x); // declaration
    T get(); // declaration
};
```

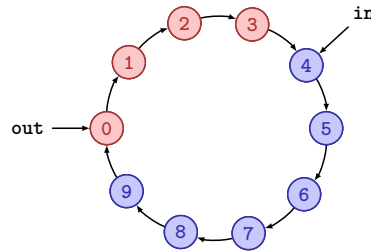


301

Template Parameterization with Values

```
template <typename T, int size>
void CircularBuffer<T,size>::put(T x){
    assert(!full());
    buf[in] = x;
    in = (in + 1) % size;
}
```

```
template <typename T, int size>
T CircularBuffer<T,size>::get(){
    assert(!empty());
    T x = buf[out];
    out = (out + 1) % size; ← Potential for optimization if size = 2k.
    return x;
}
```



302

Memory Management Revisited

Guideline “Dynamic Memory”

For each `new` there is a matching `delete`!

Avoid:

- Memory leaks: old objects that occupy memory
- Pointer to released objects: dangling pointers
- Releasing an object more than once using `delete`.

How?

303

Smart Pointers

- Can make sure that an object is deleted if and only if it is not used any more
- Are based on the RAII (Resource Acquisition is Initialization) paradigm.
- Can be used instead of a normal pointer: are implemented as class templates.
- There are `std::unique_ptr<>`, `std::shared_ptr<>` (and `std::weak_ptr<>`)

```
std::unique_ptr<Node> nodeU(new Node()); // unique pointer
std::shared_ptr<Node> nodeS(new Node()); // shared pointer
```

304

Unique Pointer

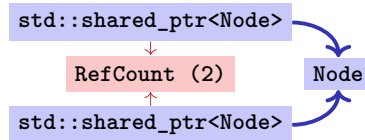
- The destructor of a `std::unique_ptr<T>` deletes the pointer contained.
- `std::unique_ptr<T>` has exclusive ownership for the contained pointer on `T`.
- Copy constructor and assignment operator are deleted. A unique pointer cannot be copied by value. The move constructor is implemented: the pointer can be moved.
- No additional runtime overhead in comparison to a normal pointer

```
std::unique_ptr<Node> nodeU(new Node()); // unique pointer
std::unique_ptr<Node> node2 = std::move(nodeU); // ok
std::unique_ptr<Node> node3 = nodeU; // error
```

305

Shared Pointer

- `std::shared_ptr<T>` Counts the numbers of owners of a pointer (reference count). When reference count goes to 0, the pointer is deleted.
- Shared pointers can be copied.
- Shared pointers provide additional space- and runtime overhead: they manage the reference counter at runtime and contain a pointer to the reference.



306

Shared Pointer

```
std::shared_ptr<Node> nodeS(new Node()); // shared pointer, rc = 1
std::shared_ptr<Node> node2 = std::move(nodeS); // ok, rc unchanged
std::shared_ptr<Node> node3 = node2; // ok, rc = 2
```

307

Smart Pointers

Some rules

- Never call `delete` on a pointer contained in a smart pointer.
- Avoid `new`, instead:

```
std::unique_ptr<Node> nodeU = std::make_unique<Node>()
std::shared_ptr<Node> nodeS = std::make_shared<Node>()
```
- Where possible, use `std::unique_ptr`
- If using `std::shared_ptr` make sure there are no cycles in the pointer graph.

308

11. Fundamental Data Structures

Abstract data types stack, queue, implementation variants for linked lists
[Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 1.5.1-1.5.2, Cormen et al, Kap. 10.1-10.2]

309

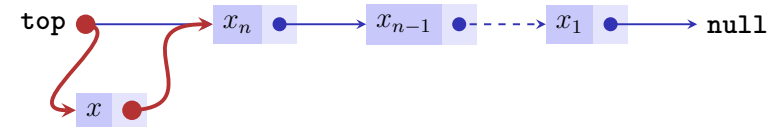
Abstract Data Types

We recall

A stack is an abstract data type (ADR) with operations

- $\text{push}(x, S)$: Puts element x on the stack S .
- $\text{pop}(S)$: Removes and returns top most element of S or null
- $\text{top}(S)$: Returns top most element of S or null .
- $\text{isEmpty}(S)$: Returns true if stack is empty, false otherwise.
- $\text{emptyStack}()$: Returns an empty stack.

Implementation Push



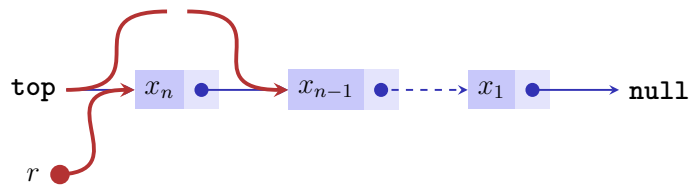
$\text{push}(x, S)$:

1. Create new list element with x and pointer to the value of top .
2. Assign the node with x to top .

310

311

Implementation Pop



$\text{pop}(S)$:

1. If $\text{top}=\text{null}$, then return null
2. otherwise memorize pointer p of top in r .
3. Set top to $p.\text{next}$ and return r

Analysis

Each of the operations push , pop , top and isEmpty on a stack can be executed in $\mathcal{O}(1)$ steps.

312

313

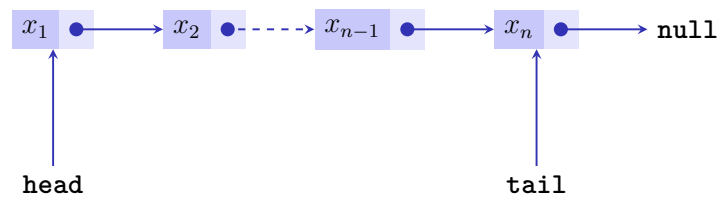
Queue (fifo)

A queue is an ADT with the following operations

- `enqueue(x, Q)`: adds x to the tail (=end) of the queue.
- `dequeue(Q)`: removes x from the head of the queue and returns x (`null` otherwise)
- `head(Q)`: returns the object from the head of the queue (`null` otherwise)
- `isEmpty(Q)`: return `true` if the queue is empty, otherwise `false`
- `emptyQueue()`: returns empty queue.

314

Invariants

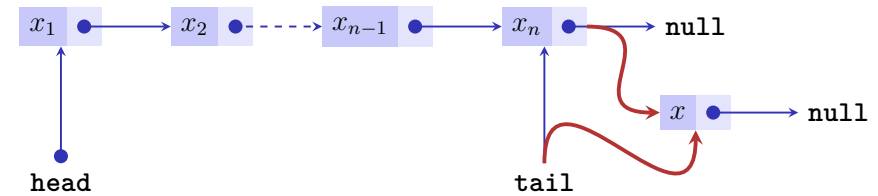


With this implementation it holds that

- either `head = tail = null`,
- or `head = tail ≠ null` and `head.next = null`
- or `head ≠ null` and `tail ≠ null` and `head ≠ tail` and `head.next ≠ null`.

316

Implementation Queue

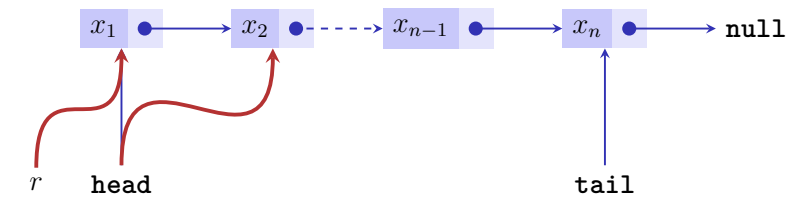


`enqueue(x, S)`:

1. Create a new list element with x and pointer to `null`.
2. If `tail ≠ null`, then set `tail.next` to the node with x .
3. Set `tail` to the node with x .
4. If `head = null`, then set `head` to `tail`.

315

Implementation Queue



`dequeue(S)`:

1. Store pointer to `head` in r . If $r = \text{null}$, then return r .
2. Set the pointer of `head` to `head.next`.
3. Is now `head = null` then set `tail` to `null`.
4. Return the value of r .

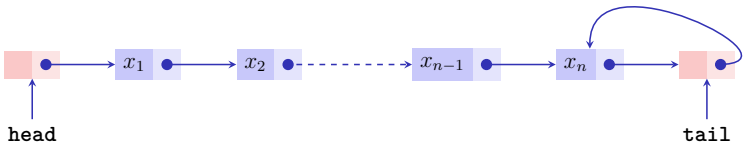
317

Analysis

Each of the operations `enqueue`, `dequeue`, `head` and `isEmpty` on the queue can be executed in $\mathcal{O}(1)$ steps.

Implementation Variants of Linked Lists

List with dummy elements (sentinels).



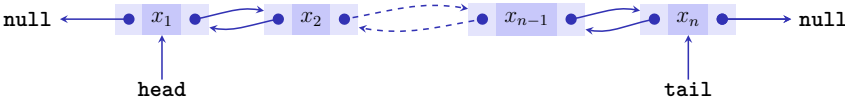
Advantage: less special cases
Variant: like this with pointer of an element stored singly indirect.
(Example: pointer to x_3 points to x_2 .)

318

319

Implementation Variants of Linked Lists

Doubly linked list



Overview

	enqueue	delete	search	concat
(A)	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(n)$
(B)	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(1)$
(C)	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(1)$
(D)	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(1)$

- (A) = singly linked
- (B) = Singly linked with dummy element at the beginning and the end
- (C) = Singly linked with indirect element addressing
- (D) = doubly linked

320

321

12. Amortized Analysis

Amortized Analysis: Aggregate Analysis, Account-Method, Potential-Method
[Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 3.3, Cormen et al, Kap. 17]

Academic Question

If we execute on a stack with n elements a number of n times `multipop(k, S)` then this costs $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$?

Certainly correct because each `multipop` may take $\mathcal{O}(n)$ steps.
How to make a better estimation?

Multistack

Multistack adds to the stack operations `push` und `pop`

`multipop(k, S)`: remove the $\min(\text{size}(S), k)$ most recently inserted objects and return them.

Implementation as with the stack. Runtime of `multipop` is $\mathcal{O}(k)$.

Amortized Analysis

- Upper bound: average performance of each considered operation in the worst case.

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \text{cost}(\text{op}_i)$$

- Makes use of the fact that a few expensive operations are opposed to many cheap operations.
- In amortized analysis we search for a credit or a potential function that captures how the cheap operations can “compensate” for the expensive ones.

Aggregate Analysis

Direct argument: compute a bound for the total number of elementary operations and divide by the total number of operations.

Aggregate Analysis: (Stack)

- With n operations at most n elements can be pushed onto the stack. Therefore a maximum of n elements can be removed from the stack
- For the total costs we get

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \text{cost}(\text{op}_i) \leq 2n$$

and thus

$$\text{amortized cost}(\text{op}_i) \leq 2 \in \mathcal{O}(1)$$

326

327

Accounting Method

Model

- The computer is driven with coins: each elementary operation of the machine costs a coin.
 - For each operation op_k of a data structure, a number of coins a_k has to be put on an account A : $A_k = A_{k-1} + a_k$
 - Use the coins from the account A to pay the true costs t_k of each operation.
 - The account A needs to provide enough coins in order to pay each of the ongoing operations op_k : $A_k - t_k \geq 0 \forall k$.
- $\Rightarrow a_k$ are the amortized costs of op_k .

328

Accounting Method (Stack)

- Each call of `push` costs 1 CHF and additionally 1 CHF will be deposited on the account. ($a_k = 2$)
- Each call to `pop` costs 1 CHF and will be paid from the account. ($a_k = 0$)

Account will never have a negative balance.

$a_k \leq 2 \forall k$, thus: constant amortized costs.

329

Potential Method

Slightly different model

- Define a potential Φ_i that is associated to the state of a data structure at time i .
- The potential shall be used to level out expensive operations and therefore needs to be chosen such that it is increased during the (frequent) cheap operations while it decreases for the (rare) expensive operations.

330

Example stack

Potential function Φ_i = number element on the stack.

- **push**(x, S): real costs $t_i = 1$. $\Phi_i - \Phi_{i-1} = 1$. Amortized costs $a_i = 2$.
- **pop**(S): real costs $t_i = 1$. $\Phi_i - \Phi_{i-1} = -1$. Amortized costs $a_i = 0$.
- **multipop**(k, S): real costs $t_i = k$. $\Phi_i - \Phi_{i-1} = -k$. amortized costs $a_i = 0$.

All operations have constant amortized cost! Therefore, on average Multipop requires a constant amount of time.¹²

¹²Note that we are not talking about the probabilistic mean but the (worst-case) average of the costs.

332

Potential Method (Formal)

Let t_i denote the real costs of the operation op_i .

Potential function $\Phi_i \geq 0$ to the data structure after i operations.

Requirement: $\Phi_i \geq \Phi_0 \forall i$.

Amortized costs of the i th operation:

$$a_i := t_i + \Phi_i - \Phi_{i-1}.$$

It holds

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i = \sum_{i=1}^n (t_i + \Phi_i - \Phi_{i-1}) = \left(\sum_{i=1}^n t_i \right) + \Phi_n - \Phi_0 \geq \sum_{i=1}^n t_i.$$

331

Example Binary Counter

Binary counter with k bits. In the worst case for each count operation maximally k bitflips. Thus $\mathcal{O}(n \cdot k)$ bitflips for counting from 1 to n . Better estimation?

Real costs t_i = number bit flips from 0 to 1 plus number of bit-flips from 1 to 0.

$$\dots 0 \underbrace{1111111}_{l \text{ Einsen}} + 1 = \dots 1 \underbrace{0000000}_{l \text{ Zeroes}}.$$

$$\Rightarrow t_i = l + 1$$

333

Binary Counter: Aggregate Analysis

Count the number of bit flips when counting from 0 to $n - 1$.

Observation

- Bit 0 flips for each $k - 1 \rightarrow k$
- Bit 1 flips for each $2k - 1 \rightarrow 2k$
- Bit 2 flips for each $4k - 1 \rightarrow 4k$

Total number bit flips $\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \frac{n}{2^i} \leq n \cdot \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^i} = 2n$

Amortized cost for each increase: $\mathcal{O}(1)$ bit flips.

Binary Counter: Account Method

Observation: for each increment exactly one bit is incremented to 1, while many bits may be reset to 0. Only a bit that had previously been set to 1 can be reset to 0.

$a_i = 2$: 1 CHF real cost for setting $0 \rightarrow 1$ plus 1 CHF to deposit on the account. Every reset $1 \rightarrow 0$ can be paid from the account.

334

335

Binary Counter: Potential Method

$$\dots 0 \underbrace{1111111}_{l \text{ ones}} + 1 = \dots 1 \underbrace{0000000}_{l \text{ zeros}}$$

potential function Φ_i : number of 1-bits of x_i .

$$\Rightarrow \Phi_0 = 0 \leq \Phi_i \forall i$$

$$\Rightarrow \Phi_i - \Phi_{i-1} = 1 - l,$$

$$\Rightarrow a_i = t_i + \Phi_i - \Phi_{i-1} = l + 1 + (1 - l) = 2.$$

Amortized constant cost for each count operation. 😊

336

13. Dictionaries

Dictionary, Self-ordering List, Implementation of Dictionaries with Array / List / Skip lists. [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 3.3,1.7, Cormen et al, Kap. Problem 17-5]

337

Dictionary

ADT to manage keys from a set \mathcal{K} with operations

- **insert**(k, D): Insert $k \in \mathcal{K}$ to the dictionary D . Already exists \Rightarrow error message.
- **delete**(k, D): Delete k from the dictionary D . Not existing \Rightarrow error message.
- **search**(k, D): Returns **true** if $k \in D$, otherwise **false**

Idea

Implement dictionary as sorted array

Worst case number of fundamental operations

Search	$\mathcal{O}(\log n)$	😊
Insert	$\mathcal{O}(n)$	😞
Delete	$\mathcal{O}(n)$	😞

338

339

Other idea

Implement dictionary as a linked list

Worst case number of fundamental operations

Search	$\mathcal{O}(n)$	😞
Insert	$\mathcal{O}(1)$ ¹³	😊
Delete	$\mathcal{O}(n)$	😞

13.1 Self Ordering

¹³Provided that we do not have to check existence.

340

341

Self Ordered Lists

Problematic with the adoption of a linked list: linear search time

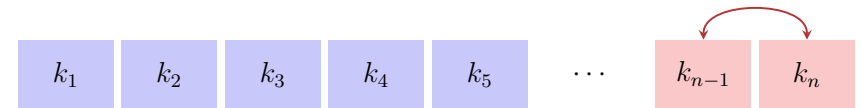
Idea: Try to order the list elements such that accesses over time are possible in a faster way

For example

- Transpose: For each access to a key, the key is moved one position closer to the front.
- Move-to-Front (MTF): For each access to a key, the key is moved to the front of the list.

Transpose

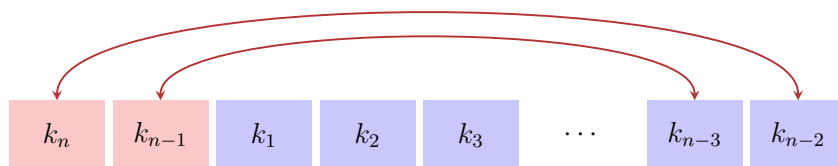
Transpose:



Worst case: Alternating sequence of n accesses to k_{n-1} and k_n . Runtime: $\Theta(n^2)$

Move-to-Front

Move-to-Front:



Alternating sequence of n accesses to k_{n-1} and k_n . Runtime: $\Theta(n)$

Also here we can provide a sequence of accesses with quadratic runtime, e.g. access to the last element. But there is no obvious strategy to counteract much better than MTF.

Analysis

Compare MTF with the best-possible competitor (algorithm) A. How much better can A be?

Assumptions:

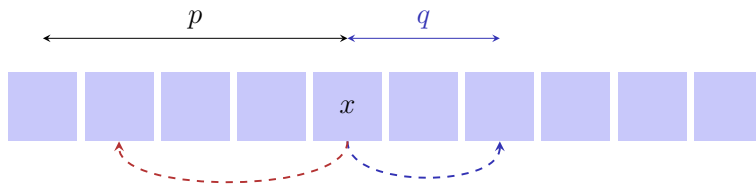
- MTF and A may only move the accessed element.
- MTF and A start with the same list.

Let M_k and A_k designate the lists after the k th step. $M_0 = A_0$.

Analysis

Costs:

- Access to x : position p of x in the list.
- No further costs, if x is moved **before** p
- Further costs q for each element that x is moved **back** starting from p .

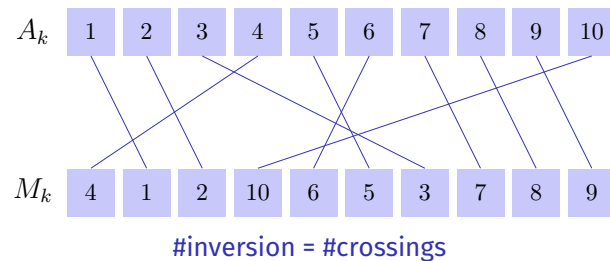


346

Potential Function

Potential function Φ = Number of inversions of A vs. MTF.

Inversion = Pair x, y such that for the positions of a and y
 $(p^{(A)}(x) < p^{(A)}(y)) \neq (p^{(M)}(x) < p^{(M)}(y))$



348

Amortized Analysis

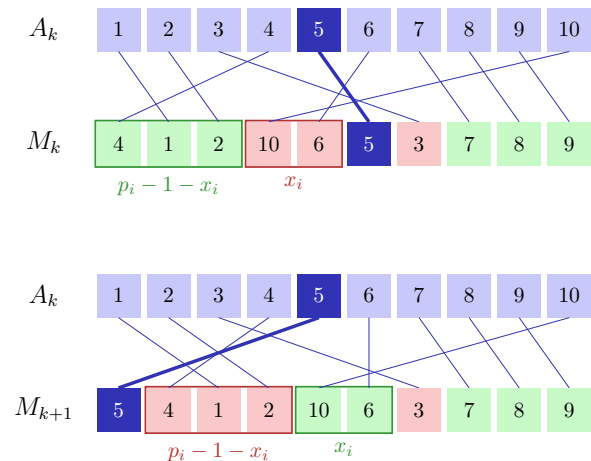
Let an arbitrary sequence of search requests be given and let $G_k^{(M)}$ and $G_k^{(A)}$ the costs in step k for Move-to-Front and A, respectively. Want estimation of $\sum_k G_k^{(M)}$ compared with $\sum_k G_k^{(A)}$.

⇒ Amortized analysis with potential function Φ .

347

Estimating the Potential Function: MTF

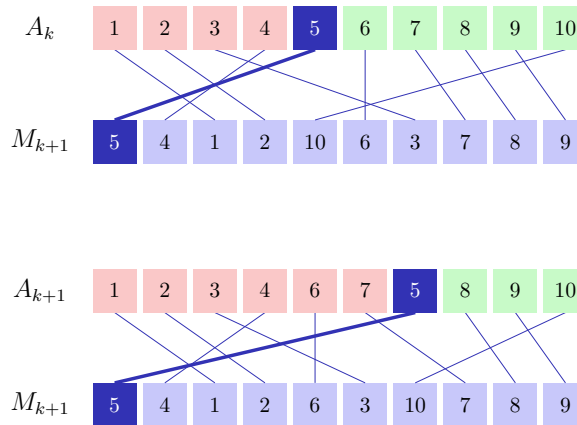
- Element i at position $p_i := p^{(M)}(i)$.
- access costs $C_k^{(M)} = p_i$.
- x_i : Number elements that are in M before p_i and in A after i .
- MTF removes x_i inversions.
- $p_i - x_i - 1$: Number elements that in M are before p_i and in A are before i .
- MTF generates $p_i - 1 - x_i$ inversions.



349

Estimating the Potential Function: A

- Wlog element i at position $p^{(A)}(i)$.
- $X_k^{(A)}$: number movements to the back (otherwise 0).
- access costs for i :
 $C_k^{(A)} = p^{(A)}(i) \geq p^{(M)}(i) - x_i$.
- A increases the number of inversions maximally by $X_k^{(A)}$.



350

Estimation

$$\Phi_{k+1} - \Phi_k \leq -x_i + (p_i - 1 - x_i) + X_k^{(A)}$$

Amortized costs of MTF in step k :

$$\begin{aligned} a_k^{(M)} &= C_k^{(M)} + \Phi_{k+1} - \Phi_k \\ &\leq p_i - x_i + (p_i - 1 - x_i) + X_k^{(A)} \\ &= (p_i - x_i) + (p_i - x_i) - 1 + X_k^{(A)} \\ &\leq C_k^{(A)} + C_k^{(A)} - 1 + X_k^{(A)} \leq 2 \cdot C_k^{(A)} + X_k^{(A)}. \end{aligned}$$

351

Estimation

Summing up costs

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_k G_k^{(M)} &= \sum_k C_k^{(M)} \leq \sum_k a_k^{(M)} \leq \sum_k 2 \cdot C_k^{(A)} + X_k^{(A)} \\ &\leq 2 \cdot \sum_k C_k^{(A)} + X_k^{(A)} \\ &= 2 \cdot \sum_k G_k^{(A)} \end{aligned}$$

In the worst case MTF requires at most twice as many operations as the optimal strategy.

352

13.2 Skip Lists

353

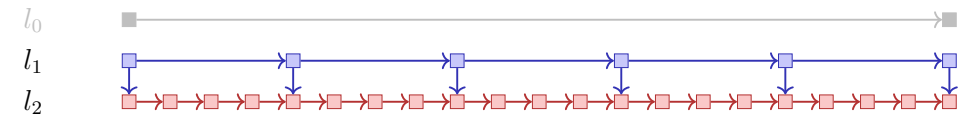
Sorted Linked List



Search for element / insertion position: worst-case n Steps.

354

Sorted Linked List with two Levels



■ Number elements: $n_0 := n$

■ Stepsize on level 1: n_1

■ Stepsize on level 2: $n_2 = 1$

⇒ Search for element / insertion position: worst-case $\frac{n_0}{n_1} + \frac{n_1}{n_2}$.

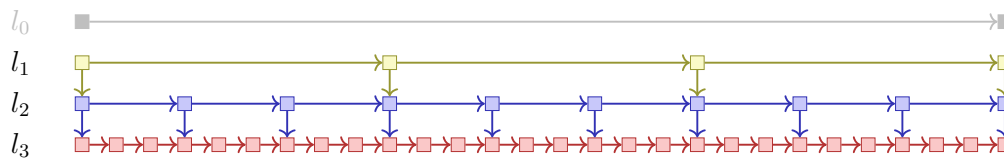
⇒ Best Choice for¹⁴ n_1 : $n_1 = \frac{n_0}{n_1} = \sqrt{n_0}$.

Search for element / insertion position: worst-case $2\sqrt{n}$ steps.

¹⁴Differentiate and set to zero, cf. appendix

355

Sorted Linked List with two Levels



■ Number elements: $n_0 := n$

■ Stepsizes on levels $0 < i < 3$: n_i

■ Stepsize on level 3: $n_3 = 1$

⇒ Best Choice for (n_1, n_2) : $n_2 = \frac{n_0}{n_1} = \frac{n_1}{n_2} = \sqrt[3]{n_0}$.

Search for element / insertion position: worst-case $3 \cdot \sqrt[3]{n}$ steps.

356

Sorted Linked List with k Levels (Skiplist)

■ Number elements: $n_0 := n$

■ Stepsizes on levels $0 < i < k$: n_i

■ Stepsize on level k : $n_k = 1$

⇒ Best Choice for (n_1, \dots, n_k) : $n_{k-1} = \frac{n_0}{n_1} = \frac{n_1}{n_2} = \dots = \sqrt[k]{n_0}$.

Search for element / insertion position: worst-case $k \cdot \sqrt[k]{n}$ steps¹⁵.

Assumption $n = 2^k$

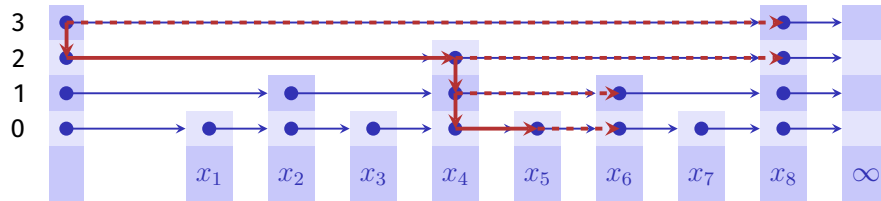
⇒ worst case $\log_2 n \cdot 2$ steps and $\frac{n_i}{n_{i+1}} = 2 \forall 0 \leq i < \log_2 n$.

¹⁵(Derivation: Appendix)

357

Search in a Skiplist

Perfect skip list



$x_1 \leq x_2 \leq x_3 \leq \dots \leq x_9$.

Example: search for a key x with $x_5 < x < x_6$.

Analysis perfect skip list (worst cases)

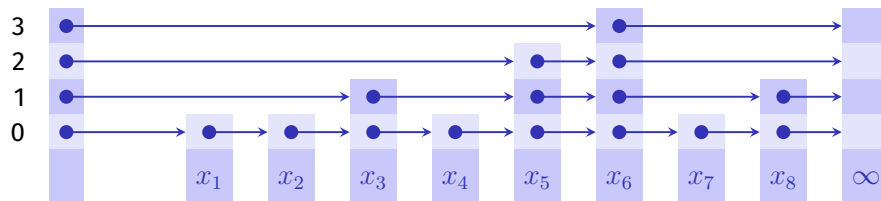
Search in $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$. Insert in $\mathcal{O}(n)$.

358

359

Randomized Skip List

Idea: insert a key with random height H with $\mathbb{P}(H = i) = \frac{1}{2^{i+1}}$.



Analysis Randomized Skip List

Theorem 15

The expected number of fundamental operations for Search, Insert and Delete of an element in a randomized skip list is $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$.

The lengthy proof that will not be presented in this course observes the length of a path from a searched node back to the starting point in the highest level.

360

361

13.3 Appendix

Mathematik zur Skipliste

[k-Level Skiplist Math]

Previous slide $\Rightarrow \frac{n_t}{n_0} = \frac{n_t}{n_{t-1}} \frac{n_{t-1}}{n_{t-2}} \dots \frac{n_1}{n_0} = \left(\frac{n_1}{n_0}\right)^t$

Particularly $1 = n_k = \frac{n_1^k}{n_0^{k-1}} \Rightarrow n_1 = \sqrt[k]{n_0^{k-1}}$

Thus $n_{k-1} = \frac{n_0}{n_1} = \sqrt[k]{\frac{n_0^k}{n_0^{k-1}}} = \sqrt[k]{n_0}$.

Maximum number of total steps in the skip list: $f(\vec{n}) = k \cdot (\sqrt[k]{n_0})$

Assume $n_0 = 2^k$, then $\frac{n_l}{n_{l+1}} = 2$ for all $0 \leq l < k$ (skiplist halves data in each step) and $f(n) = k \cdot 2 = 2 \log_2 n \in \Theta(\log n)$.

[k-Level Skiplist Math]

Let the number of data points n_0 and number levels $k > 0$ be given and let n_l be the numbers of elements skipped per level l , $n_k = 1$. Maximum number of total steps in the skip list:

$$f(\vec{n}) = \frac{n_0}{n_1} + \frac{n_1}{n_2} + \dots + \frac{n_{k-1}}{n_k}$$

Minimize f for (n_1, \dots, n_{k-1}) : $\frac{\partial f(\vec{n})}{\partial n_t} = 0$ for all $0 < t < k$,
 $\frac{\partial f(\vec{n})}{\partial n_t} = -\frac{n_{t-1}}{n_t^2} + \frac{1}{n_{t+1}} = 0 \Rightarrow n_{t+1} = \frac{n_t^2}{n_{t-1}}$ and $\frac{n_{t+1}}{n_t} = \frac{n_t}{n_{t-1}}$.

14. Hashing

Hash Tables, Pre-Hashing, Hashing, Resolving Collisions using Chaining, Simple Uniform Hashing, Popular Hash Functions, Table-Doubling, Open Addressing: Probing, Uniform Hashing [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 4.1-4.3.2, 4.3.4, Cormen et al, Kap. 11-11.4]

Motivating Example

Goal: Efficient management of a table of all n ETH-students.

Possible Requirement: fast access (insertion, removal, find) of a dataset by name

Dictionary

Abstract Data Type (ADT) D to manage items¹⁶ i with keys $k \in \mathcal{K}$ with operations

- $D.\text{insert}(i)$: Insert or replace i in the dictionary D .
- $D.\text{delete}(i)$: Delete i from the dictionary D . Not existing \Rightarrow error message.
- $D.\text{search}(k)$: Returns item with key k if it exists.

¹⁶Key-value pairs (k, v) , in the following we consider mainly the keys

Dictionary in C++

Associative Container `std::unordered_map<>`

```
// Create an unordered_map of strings that map to strings
std::unordered_map<std::string, std::string> u = {
    {"RED", "#FF0000"}, {"GREEN", "#00FF00"}
};

u["BLUE"] = "#0000FF"; // Add

std::cout << "The HEX of color RED is: " << u["RED"] << "\n";

for( const auto& n : u ) // iterate over key-value pairs
    std::cout << n.first << ":" << n.second << "\n";
```

Motivation / Use

Perhaps the most popular data structure.

- Supported in many programming languages (C++, Java, Python, Ruby, Javascript, C# ...)
- Obvious use
 - Databases, Spreadsheets
 - Symbol tables in compilers and interpreters
- Less obvious
 - Substring Search (Google, grep)
 - String commonalities (Document distance, DNA)
 - File Synchronisation
 - Cryptography: File-transfer and identification

1. Idea: Direct Access Table (Array)

Index	Item
0	-
1	-
2	-
3	[3,value(3)]
4	-
5	-
⋮	⋮
k	[k,value(k)]
⋮	⋮

Problems

1. Keys must be non-negative integers
2. Large key-range \Rightarrow large array

Solution to the first problem: Pre-hashing

Prehashing: Map keys to positive integers using a function $ph : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$

- Theoretically always possible because each key is stored as a bit-sequence in the computer
- Theoretically also: $x = y \Leftrightarrow ph(x) = ph(y)$
- Practically: APIs offer functions for pre-hashing. (Java: `object.hashCode()`, C++: `std::hash<>`, Python: `hash(object)`)
- APIs map the key from the key set to an integer with a restricted size.¹⁷

¹⁷Therefore the implication $ph(x) = ph(y) \Rightarrow x = y$ does **not** hold any more for all x, y .

370

371

Prehashing Example : String

Mapping Name $s = s_1 s_2 \dots s_{l_s}$ to key

$$ph(s) = \left(\sum_{i=0}^{l_s-1} s_{l_s-i} \cdot b^i \right) \bmod 2^w$$

b so that different names map to different keys as far as possible.

b Word-size of the system (e.g. 32 or 64)

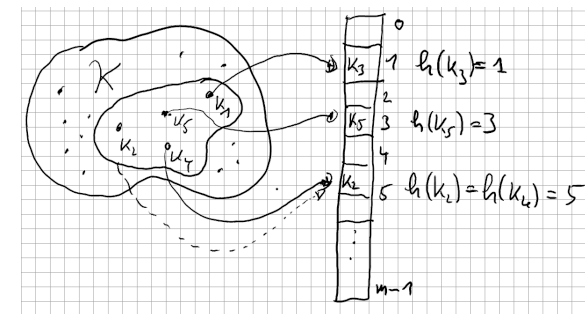
Example (Java) with $b = 31$, $w = 32$. Ascii-Values s_i .

Anna $\mapsto 2045632$

Jacqueline $\mapsto 2042089953442505 \bmod 2^{32} = 507919049$

Solution for 2nd Problem: Hashing

Reduce the universe. Map (hash-function) $h : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \{0, \dots, m-1\}$ ($m \approx n =$ number entries of the table)



Collision: $h(k_i) = h(k_j)$.

372

373

Nomenclature

Hash function h : Mapping from the set of keys \mathcal{K} to the index set $\{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$ of an array (hash table).

$$h : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}.$$

Usually $|\mathcal{K}| \gg m$. There are $k_1, k_2 \in \mathcal{K}$ with $h(k_1) = h(k_2)$ (collision).

A hash function should map the set of keys as uniformly as possible to the hash table.

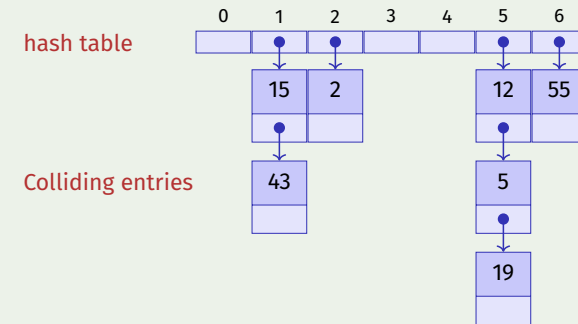
374

Resolving Collisions: Chaining

$m = 7, \mathcal{K} = \{0, \dots, 500\}, h(k) = k \bmod m.$

Keys 12, 55, 5, 15, 2, 19, 43

Direct Chaining of the Colliding entries



375

Algorithm for Hashing with Chaining

- **insert(i)** Check if key k of item i is in list at position $h(k)$. If no, then append i to the end of the list. Otherwise replace element by i .
- **find(k)** Check if key k is in list at position $h(k)$. If yes, return the data associated to key k , otherwise return empty element `null`.
- **delete(k)** Search the list at position $h(k)$ for k . If successful, remove the list element.

376

Worst-case Analysis

Worst-case: all keys are mapped to the same index.

$\Rightarrow \Theta(n)$ per operation in the worst case. 😞

377

Simple Uniform Hashing

Strong Assumptions: Each key will be mapped to one of the m available slots

- with equal probability (uniformity)
- and independent of where other keys are hashed (independence).

Simple Uniform Hashing

Under the assumption of simple uniform hashing:

Expected length of a chain when n elements are inserted into a hash table with m elements

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{E}(\text{Length of Chain } j) &= \mathbb{E}\left(\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \mathbb{1}(h(k_i) = j)\right) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \mathbb{P}(h(k_i) = j) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{m} = \frac{n}{m}\end{aligned}$$

$\alpha = n/m$ is called load factor of the hash table.

378

379

Simple Uniform Hashing

Theorem 16

Let a hash table with chaining be filled with load-factor $\alpha = \frac{n}{m} < 1$. Under the assumption of simple uniform hashing, the next operation has expected costs of $\Theta(1 + \alpha)$.

Consequence: if the number slots m of the hash table is always at least proportional to the number of elements n of the hash table, $n \in \mathcal{O}(m) \Rightarrow$ Expected Running time of Insertion, Search and Deletion is $\mathcal{O}(1)$.

380

Further Analysis (directly chained list)

1. Unsuccessful search. The average list length is $\alpha = \frac{n}{m}$. The list has to be traversed entirely.

\Rightarrow Average number of entries considered

$$C'_n = \alpha.$$

2. Successful search. Consider the insertion history: key j sees an average list length of $(j - 1)/m$.

\Rightarrow Average number of considered entries

$$C_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^n (1 + (j - 1)/m) = 1 + \frac{1}{n} \frac{n(n - 1)}{2m} \approx 1 + \frac{\alpha}{2}.$$

381

Advantages and Disadvantages of Chaining

Advantages

- Possible to overcommit: $\alpha > 1$ allowed.
- Easy to remove keys.

Disadvantages

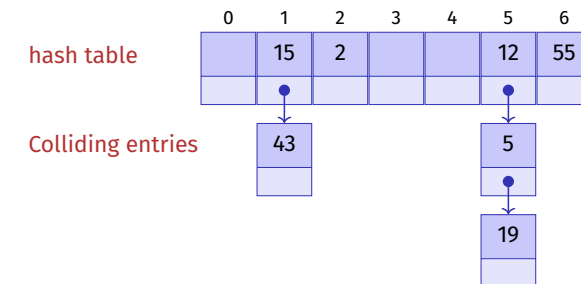
- Memory consumption of the chains

[Variant: Indirect Chaining]

Example $m = 7$, $\mathcal{K} = \{0, \dots, 500\}$, $h(k) = k \bmod m$.

Keys 12, 55, 5, 15, 2, 19, 43

Indirect chaining of colliding entries



382

383

Examples of popular Hash Functions

$$h(k) = k \bmod m$$

Ideal: m prime, not too close to powers of 2 or 10

But often: $m = 2^k - 1$ ($k \in \mathbb{N}$)

Examples of popular Hash Functions

Multiplication method

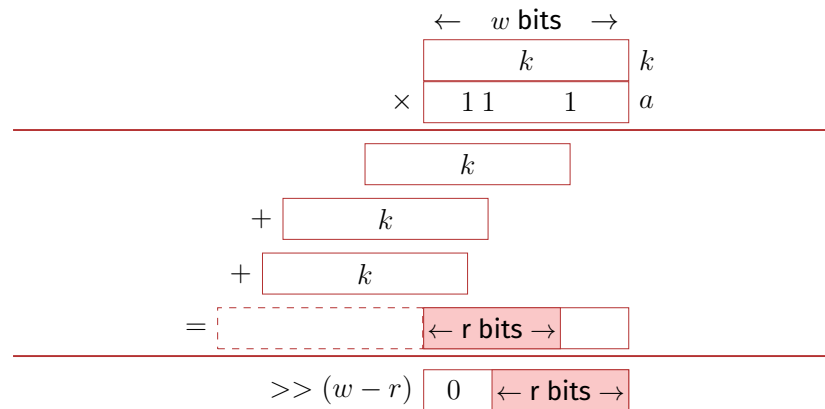
$$h(k) = \left\lfloor (a \cdot k \bmod 2^w) / 2^{w-r} \right\rfloor \bmod m$$

- A good value of a : $\left\lfloor \frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{2} \cdot 2^w \right\rfloor$: Integer that represents the first w bits of the fractional part of the irrational number.
- Table size $m = 2^r$, w = size of the machine word in bits.
- Multiplication adds k along all bits of a , integer division by 2^{w-r} and $\bmod m$ extract the upper r bits.
- Written as code very simple: `a * k >> (w-r)`

384

385

Illustration



386

Table size increase

- We do not know beforehand how large n will be
- Require $m = \Theta(n)$ at all times.

Table size needs to be adapted.
Hash-Function changes \Rightarrow rehashing

- Allocate array A' with size $m' > m$
- Insert each entry of A into A' (with re-hashing the keys)
- Set $A \leftarrow A'$.
- Costs $\mathcal{O}(n + m + m')$.

How to choose m' ?

387

Table size increase

Double the table size depending on the load factor.

\Rightarrow Amortized Analysis.

Each operation of hashing with chaining has expected amortized costs $\Theta(1)$.

Open Addressing

Store the colliding entries directly in the hash table using a probing function $s : \mathcal{K} \times \{0, 1, \dots, m-1\} \rightarrow \{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$

Key table position along a probing sequence

$$S(k) := (s(k, 0), s(k, 1), \dots, s(k, m-1)) \mod m$$

Probing sequence must for each $k \in \mathcal{K}$ be a permutation of $\{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$

Notational clarification: this method uses open addressing (meaning that the positions in the hashtable are not fixed) but it is called a closed hashing procedure (because the entries stay in the hashtable).

388

389

Algorithms for open addressing

- **insert**(i) Search for key k of i in the table according to $S(k)$. If k is not present, insert k at the first free position in the probing sequence. Otherwise error message.
- **find**(k) Traverse table entries according to $S(k)$. If k is found, return data associated to k . Otherwise return an empty element `null`.
- **delete**(k) Search k in the table according to $S(k)$. If k is found, replace it with a special key `removed`.

390

Linear Probing

$$s(k, j) = h(k) + j \Rightarrow S(k) = (h(k), h(k) + 1, \dots, h(k) + m - 1) \mod m$$

$m = 7, \mathcal{K} = \{0, \dots, 500\}, h(k) = k \mod m.$

Key 12, 55, 5, 15, 2, 19

0	1	2	3	4	5	6
5	15	2	19		12	55

391

[Analysis linear probing (without proof)]

1. Unsuccessful search. Average number of considered entries

$$C'_n \approx \frac{1}{2} \left(1 + \frac{1}{(1 - \alpha)^2} \right)$$

2. Successful search. Average number of considered entries

$$C_n \approx \frac{1}{2} \left(1 + \frac{1}{1 - \alpha} \right).$$

392

Discussion

Example $\alpha = 0.95$

The unsuccessful search considers 200 table entries on average! (Here without derivation.)

Disadvantage of the method?

Primary clustering: similar hash addresses have similar probing sequences \Rightarrow long contiguous areas of used entries.

393

Quadratic Probing

$$s(k, j) = h(k) + \lceil j/2 \rceil^2 (-1)^{j+1}$$

$$S(k) = (h(k), h(k) + 1, h(k) - 1, h(k) + 4, h(k) - 4, \dots) \mod m$$

$m = 7, \mathcal{K} = \{0, \dots, 500\}, h(k) = k \mod m.$

Keys 12, 55, 5, 15, 2, 19

0	1	2	3	4	5	6
19	15	2		5	12	55

394

Discussion

Example $\alpha = 0.95$

Unsuccessfully search considers 22 entries on average
(Here without derivation.)

Problems of this method?

Secondary clustering: Synonyms k and k' (with $h(k) = h(k')$) travers the same probing sequence.

396

[Analysis Quadratic Probing (without Proof)]

1. Unsuccessful search. Average number of entries considered

$$C'_n \approx \frac{1}{1 - \alpha} - \alpha + \ln\left(\frac{1}{1 - \alpha}\right)$$

2. Successful search. Average number of entries considered

$$C_n \approx 1 + \ln\left(\frac{1}{1 - \alpha}\right) - \frac{\alpha}{2}.$$

395

Double Hashing

Two hash functions $h(k)$ and $h'(k)$. $s(k, j) = h(k) + j \cdot h'(k)$.

$$S(k) = (h(k), h(k) + h'(k), h(k) + 2h'(k), \dots, h(k) + (m - 1)h'(k)) \mod m$$

$m = 7, \mathcal{K} = \{0, \dots, 500\}, h(k) = k \mod 7, h'(k) = 1 + k \mod 5.$

Keys 12, 55, 5, 15, 2, 19

0	1	2	3	4	5	6
5	15	2	19		12	55

397

Double Hashing

- Probing sequence must permute all hash addresses. Thus $h'(k) \neq 0$ and $h'(k)$ may not divide m , for example guaranteed with m prime.
- h' should be as independent of h as possible (to avoid secondary clustering)

Independence:

$$\mathbb{P}((h(k) = h(k')) \wedge (h'(k) = h'(k'))) = \mathbb{P}(h(k) = h(k')) \cdot \mathbb{P}(h'(k) = h'(k')).$$

Independence largely fulfilled by $h(k) = k \bmod m$ and $h'(k) = 1 + k \bmod (m - 2)$ (m prime).

398

Uniform Hashing

Strong assumption: the probing sequence $S(k)$ of a key l is equally likely to be any of the $m!$ permutations of $\{0, 1, \dots, m - 1\}$
(Double hashing is reasonably close)

400

[Analysis Double Hashing]

Let h and h' be independent, then:

1. Unsuccessful search. Average number of considered entries:

$$C'_n \approx \frac{1}{1 - \alpha}$$

2. Successful search. Average number of considered entries:

$$C_n \approx \frac{1}{\alpha} \ln\left(\frac{1}{1 - \alpha}\right)$$

399

Analysis of Uniform Hashing with Open Addressing

Theorem 17

Let an open-addressing hash table be filled with load-factor $\alpha = \frac{n}{m} < 1$. Under the assumption of uniform hashing, the next operation has expected costs of $\leq \frac{1}{1 - \alpha}$.

401

Analysis: Proof of the theorem

Random Variable X : Number of probings when searching without success.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{P}(X \geq i) &= \frac{n}{m} \cdot \frac{n-1}{m-1} \cdot \frac{n-2}{m-2} \cdots \frac{n-i+2}{m-i+2} \\ &\stackrel{**}{\leq} \left(\frac{n}{m}\right)^{i-1} = \alpha^{i-1}. \quad (1 \leq i \leq m)\end{aligned}$$

* : Event A_j : slot used during step j .

$$\mathbb{P}(A_1 \cap \cdots \cap A_{i-1}) = \mathbb{P}(A_1) \cdot \mathbb{P}(A_2|A_1) \cdot \dots \cdot \mathbb{P}(A_{i-1}|A_1 \cap \cdots \cap A_{i-2}),$$

** : $\frac{n-1}{m-1} < \frac{n}{m}$ because $n < m$: $\frac{n-1}{m-1} < \frac{n}{m} \Leftrightarrow \frac{n-1}{n} < \frac{m-1}{m} \Leftrightarrow 1 - \frac{1}{n} < 1 - \frac{1}{m} \Leftrightarrow n < m$
($n > 0, m > 0$)

Moreover $\mathbb{P}(x \geq i) = 0$ for $i \geq m$. Therefore

$$\mathbb{E}(X) \stackrel{\text{Appendix}}{=} \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(X \geq i) \leq \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \alpha^{i-1} = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \alpha^i = \frac{1}{1-\alpha}.$$

402

[Successful search of Uniform Open Hashing]

Theorem 18

Let an open-addressing hash table be filled with load-factor $\alpha = \frac{n}{m} < 1$. Under the assumption of uniform hashing, the successful search has expected costs of $\leq \frac{1}{\alpha} \cdot \log \frac{1}{1-\alpha}$.

Proof: Cormen et al, Kap. 11.4

403

Overview

	$\alpha = 0.50$		$\alpha = 0.90$		$\alpha = 0.95$	
	C_n	C'_n	C_n	C'_n	C_n	C'_n
(Direct) Chaining	1.25	0.50	1.45	0.90	1.48	0.95
Linear Probing	1.50	2.50	5.50	50.50	10.50	200.50
Quadratic Probing	1.44	2.19	2.85	11.40	3.52	22.05
Uniform Hashing	1.39	2.00	2.56	10.00	3.15	20.00

α : load factor.

C_n : Number steps successful search,

C'_n : Number steps unsuccessful search

404

14.7 Appendix

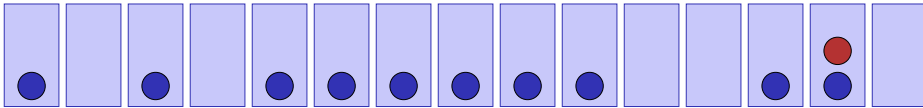
Some mathematical formulas

405

[Birthday Paradox]

Assumption: m urns, n balls (wlog $n \leq m$).

n balls are put uniformly distributed into the urns



What is the collision probability?

Birthdayparadox: with how many people (n) the probability that two of them share the same birthday ($m = 365$) is larger than 50%?

[Birthday Paradox]

$$\mathbb{P}(\text{no collision}) = \frac{m}{m} \cdot \frac{m-1}{m} \cdot \dots \cdot \frac{m-n+1}{m} = \frac{m!}{(m-n)! \cdot m^n}.$$

Let $a \ll m$. With $e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \dots$ approximate $1 - \frac{a}{m} \approx e^{-\frac{a}{m}}$. This yields:

$$1 \cdot \left(1 - \frac{1}{m}\right) \cdot \left(1 - \frac{2}{m}\right) \cdot \dots \cdot \left(1 - \frac{n-1}{m}\right) \approx e^{-\frac{1+\dots+n-1}{m}} = e^{-\frac{n(n-1)}{2m}}.$$

Thus

$$\mathbb{P}(\text{Kollision}) = 1 - e^{-\frac{n(n-1)}{2m}}.$$

Puzzle answer: with 23 people the probability for a birthday collision is 50.7%. Derived from the slightly more accurate Stirling formula. $n! \approx \sqrt{2\pi n} \cdot n^n \cdot e^{-n}$

406

407

[Formula for Expected Value]

$X \geq 0$ discrete random variable with $\mathbb{E}(X) < \infty$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{E}(X) &\stackrel{(def)}{=} \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} x \mathbb{P}(X = x) \\ &\stackrel{\text{Counting}}{=} \sum_{x=1}^{\infty} \sum_{y=x}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(X = y) \\ &= \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(X > x) \end{aligned}$$

15. C++ advanced (III): Functors and Lambda

408

409

What do we learn today?

- Functors: objects with overloaded function operator ().
- Closures
- Lambda-Expressions: syntactic sugar
- Captures

Functors: Motivation

A simple output filter

```
template <typename T, typename Function>
void filter(const T& collection, Function f){
    for (const auto& x: collection)
        if (f(x)) std::cout << x << " ";
    std::cout << "\n";
}
```

filter works if the first argument offers an iterator and if the second argument can be applied to elements of the iterator with a result that can be converted to bool.

410

411

Functors: Motivation

```
template <typename T, typename Function>
void filter(const T& collection, Function f);
```

```
template <typename T>
bool even(T x){
    return x % 2 == 0;
}
```

```
std::vector<int> a {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,9,11,16,19};
filter(a,even<int>); // output: 2,4,6,16
```

412

Functor: Object with Overloaded Operator ()

```
class GreaterThan{
    int value; // state
public:
    GreaterThan(int x):value{x}{}

    bool operator() (int par) const {
        return par > value;
    }
};
```

A Functor is a callable object. Can be understood as a stateful function.

```
std::vector<int> a {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,9,11,16,19};
int value=8;
filter(a,GreaterThan(value)); // 9,11,16,19
```

413

Functor: object with overloaded operator ()

```
template <typename T>
class GreaterThan{
    T value;
public:
    GreaterThan(T x):value{x}{}

    bool operator() (T par) const{
        return par > value;
    }
};
```

(this also works with a template, of course)

```
std::vector<int> a {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,9,11,16,19};
int value=8;
filter(a, GreaterThan<int>(value)); // 9,11,16,19
```

414

The same with a Lambda-Expression

```
std::vector<int> a {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,9,11,16,19};
int value=8;

filter(a, [value](int x) {return x > value;} );
```

415

Sum of Elements – Old School

```
std::vector<int> a {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,9,11,16,19};
int sum = 0;
for (auto x: a)
    sum += x;
std::cout << sum << std::endl; // 83
```

416

Sum of Elements – with Functor

```
template <typename T>
struct Sum{
    T value = 0;

    void operator() (T par){ value += par; }
};

std::vector<int> a {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,9,11,16,19};
Sum<int> sum;
// for_each copies sum: we need to copy the result back
sum = std::for_each(a.begin(), a.end(), sum);
std::cout << sum.value << std::endl; // 83
```

417

Sum of Elements – with References

```
template <typename T>
struct SumR{
    T& value;
    SumR (T& v):value{v} {}

    void operator() (T par){ value += par; }
};

std::vector<int> a {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,9,11,16,19};
int s=0;
SumR<int> sum{s};
// cannot (and do not need to) assign to sum here
std::for_each(a.begin(), a.end(), sum);
std::cout << s << std::endl; // 83
```

Of course this works, very similarly, using pointers

418

Sum of Elements – with Λ

```
std::vector<int> a {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,9,11,16,19};

int s=0;

std::for_each(a.begin(), a.end(), [&s] (int x) {s += x;});

std::cout << s << std::endl;
```

419

Sorting by Different Order

```
// pre: i >= 0
// post: returns sum of digits of i
int q(int i){
    int res =0;
    for(;i>0;i/=10)
        res += i % 10;
    return res;
}

std::vector<int> v {10,12,9,7,28,22,14};
std::sort (v.begin(), v.end(),
    [] (int i, int j) { return q(i) < q(j);}
);
```

Now $v = 10, 12, 22, 14, 7, 9, 28$ (sorted by sum of digits)

420

Lambda-Expressions in Detail

```
[value] (int x) ->bool {return x > value;}
```

capture parameters return type statement

421

Closure

```
[value] (int x) ->bool {return x > value;}
```

- Lambda expressions evaluate to a temporary object – a closure
- The closure retains the execution context of the function - the captured objects.
- Lambda expressions can be implemented as functors.

422

Simple Lambda Expression

```
[]()->void {std::cout << "Hello World";}
```

call:

```
[]()->void {std::cout << "Hello World";}();
```

assignment:

```
auto f = []()->void {std::cout << "Hello World";};
```

423

Minimal Lambda Expression

```
[]{}  
[<div data-bbox="35 655 428 700" data-label="List-Group">

- Return type can be inferred if no or only one return statement is present.18

```

```
[]() {std::cout << "Hello World";}
```

- If no parameters and no explicit return type, then () can be omitted.

```
[] {std::cout << "Hello World";}
```

- [...] can never be omitted.

¹⁸Since C++14 also several returns possible, provided that the same return type is deduced

424

Examples

```
[](int x, int y) {std::cout << x * y;} (4,5);
```

Output: 20

425

Examples

```
int k = 8;
auto f = [](int& v) {v += v;};
f(k);
std::cout << k;
```

Output: 16

426

Capture – Lambdas

For Lambda-expressions the capture list determines the context accessible
Syntax:

- [x]: Access a copy of x (read-only)
- [&x]: Capture x by reference
- [&x,y]: Capture x by reference and y by value
- [&]: Default capture all objects by reference in the scope of the lambda expression
- [=]: Default capture all objects by value in the context of the Lambda-Expression

428

Examples

```
int k = 8;
auto f = [](int v) {v += v;};
f(k);
std::cout << k;
```

Output: 8

427

Capture – Lambdas

```
int elements=0;
int sum=0;
std::for_each(v.begin(), v.end(),
    [&] (int k) {sum += k; elements++;} // capture all by reference
)
```

429

Capture – Lambdas

```
template <typename T>
void sequence(vector<int> & v, T done){
    int i=0;
    while (!done()) v.push_back(i++);
}
```

```
vector<int> s;
sequence(s, [&] {return s.size() >= 5;})
```

now v = 0 1 2 3 4

The capture list refers to the context of the lambda expression.

Capture – Lambdas

When is the value captured?

```
int v = 42;
auto func = [=] {std::cout << v << "\n"};
v = 7;
func();
```

Output: 42

Values are assigned when the lambda-expression is created.

430

Capture – Lambdas

(Why) does this work?

```
class Limited{
    int limit = 10;
public:
    // count entries smaller than limit
    int count(const std::vector<int>& a){
        int c = 0;
        std::for_each(a.begin(), a.end(),
            [=,&c] (int x) {if (x < limit) c++;}
        );
        return c;
    }
};
```

The this pointer is implicitly copied by value

Capture – Lambdas

```
struct mutant{
    int i = 0;
    void do(){ [=] {i=42;}();}
};
```

```
mutant m;
m.do();
std::cout << m.i;
```

Output: 42

The this pointer is implicitly copied by value

432

431

433

Lambda Expressions are Functors

```
[x, &y] () {y = x;}
```

can be implemented as

```
unnamed {x,y};
```

with

```
class unnamed {  
    int x; int& y;  
    unnamed (int x_, int& y_) : x (x_), y (y_) {}  
    void operator () () {y = x;}  
};
```

434

Lambda Expressions are Functors

```
[=] () {return x + y;}
```

can be implemented as

```
unnamed {x,y};
```

with

```
class unnamed {  
    int x; int y;  
    unnamed (int x_, int y_) : x (x_), y (y_) {}  
    int operator () () const {return x + y;}  
};
```

435

Polymorphic Function Wrapper `std::function`

```
#include <functional>
```

```
int k= 8;  
std::function<int(int)> f;  
f = [k](int i){ return i+k; };  
std::cout << f(8); // 16
```

can be used in order to store lambda expressions.

Other Examples

```
std::function<int(int,int)>; std::function<void(double)> ...
```

<http://en.cppreference.com/w/cpp/utility/functional/function>

436

Example

```
template <typename T>  
auto toFunction(std::vector<T> v){  
    return [v] (T x) -> double {  
        int index = (int)(x+0.5);  
        if (index < 0) index = 0;  
        if (index >= v.size()) index = v.size()-1;  
        return v[index];  
    };  
}
```

437

Example

```
auto Gaussian(double mu, double sigma){
    return [mu,sigma](double x) {
        const double a = ( x - mu ) / sigma;
        return std::exp( -0.5 * a * a );
    };
}

template <typename F, typename Kernel>
auto smooth(F f, Kernel kernel){
    return [kernel,f] (auto x) {
        // compute convolution ...
        // and return result
    };
}
```

438

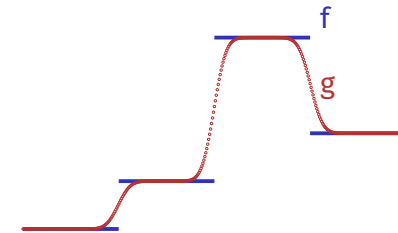
Conclusion

- Functors allow to write functional programs in C++. Lambdas are syntactic sugar to simplify this.
- With functors/lambdas classic patters from functional programming (e.g. map / filter /reduce) can be applied in C++.
- In combination with templates and the type inference (auto) very powerful functions can be stored in variables. Functions can even return functions (so called higher order functions).

440

Example

```
std::vector<double> v {1,2,5,3};
auto f = toFunction(v);
auto k = Gaussian(0,0.1);
auto g = smooth(f,k);
```



439

16. Binary Search Trees

[Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 5.1, Cormen et al, Kap. 12.1 - 12.3]

441

Dictionary implementation

Hashing: implementation of dictionaries with expected very fast access times.

Disadvantages of hashing: linear access time in worst case. **Some operations not supported at all:**

- enumerate keys in increasing order
- next smallest key to given key
- Key k in given interval $k \in [l, r]$

442

Trees

Trees are

- Generalized lists: nodes can have more than one successor
- Special graphs: graphs consist of nodes and edges. A tree is a fully connected, directed, acyclic graph.

443

Trees

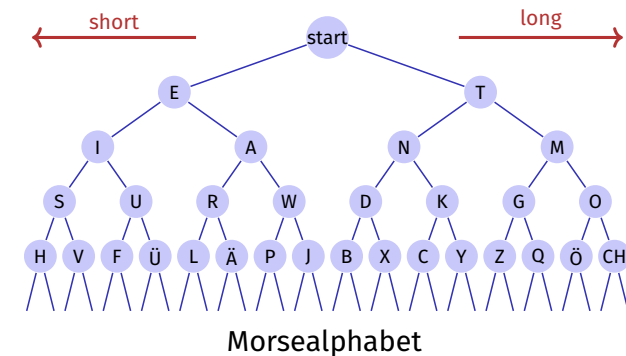
Use

- Decision trees: hierarchic representation of decision rules
- syntax trees: parsing and traversing of expressions, e.g. in a compiler
- Code trees: representation of a code, e.g. morse alphabet, huffman code
- Search trees: allow efficient searching for an element by value



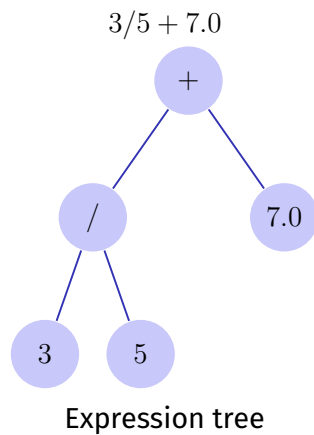
444

Examples

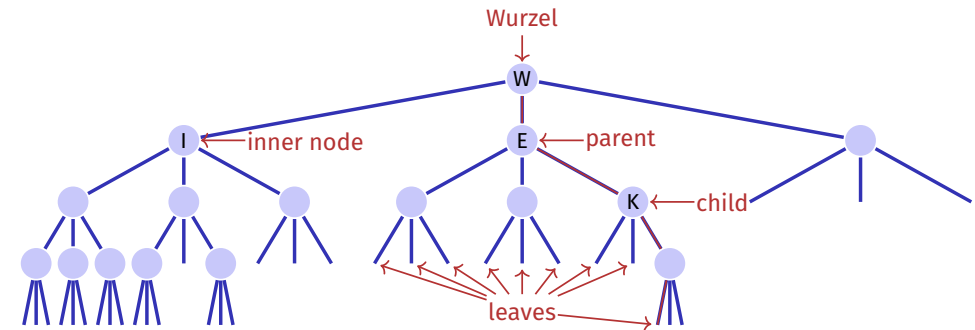


445

Examples



Nomenclature



- Order of the tree: maximum number of child nodes, here: 3
- Height of the tree: maximum path length root – leaf (here: 4)

Binary Trees

A binary tree is

- either a leaf, i.e. an empty tree,
- or an inner leaf with two trees T_l (left subtree) and T_r (right subtree) as left and right successor.

In each inner node v we store

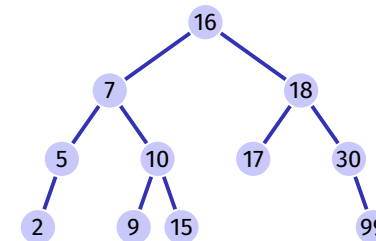
- a key $v.key$ and
 - two nodes $v.left$ and $v.right$ to the roots of the left and right subtree.
- a leaf is represented by the **null**-pointer



Binary search tree

A binary search tree is a binary tree that fulfils the search tree property:

- Every node v stores a key
- Keys in left subtree $v.left$ are smaller than $v.key$
- Keys in right subtree $v.right$ are greater than $v.key$



Searching

Input: Binary search tree with root r , key k

Output: Node v with $v.\text{key} = k$ or **null**

$v \leftarrow r$

while $v \neq \text{null}$ **do**

if $k = v.\text{key}$ **then**

return v

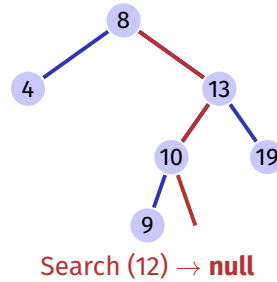
else if $k < v.\text{key}$ **then**

$v \leftarrow v.\text{left}$

else

$v \leftarrow v.\text{right}$

return null



450

Height of a tree

The height $h(T)$ of a binary tree T with root r is given by

$$h(r) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } r = \text{null} \\ 1 + \max\{h(r.\text{left}), h(r.\text{right})\} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

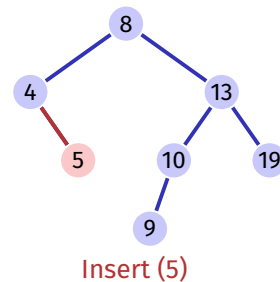
The worst case run time of the search is thus $\mathcal{O}(h(T))$

451

Insertion of a key

Insertion of the key k

- Search for k
- If successful search: e.g. output error
- Of no success: insert the key at the leaf reached



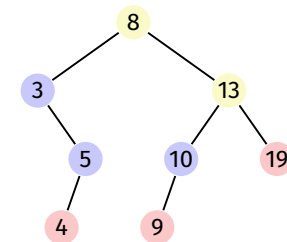
452

Remove node

Three cases possible:

- Node has no children
- Node has one child
- Node has two children

[Leaves do not count here]

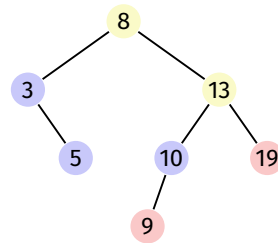
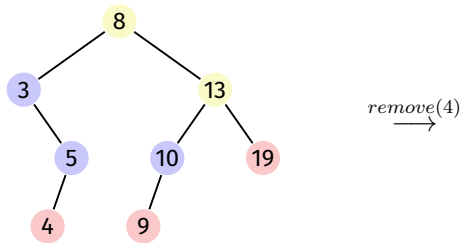


453

Remove node

Node has no children

Simple case: replace node by leaf.

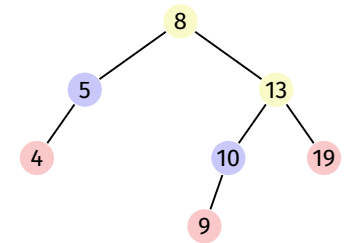
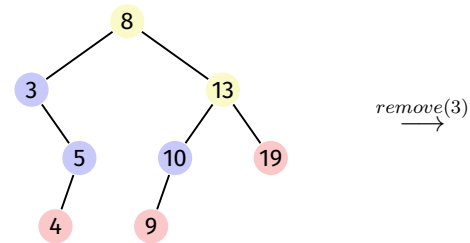


454

Remove node

Node has one child

Also simple: replace node by single child.



455

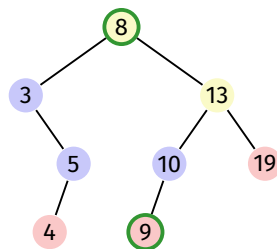
Remove node

Node v has two children

The following observation helps: the smallest key in the right subtree $v.right$ (the symmetric successor of v)

- is smaller than all keys in $v.right$
- is greater than all keys in $v.left$
- and cannot have a left child.

Solution: replace v by its symmetric successor.

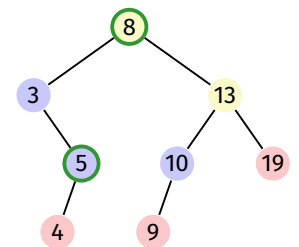


456

By symmetry...

Node v has two children

Also possible: replace v by its symmetric predecessor.



457

Algorithm SymmetricSuccessor(v)

Input: Node v of a binary search tree.

Output: Symmetric successor of v

```
 $w \leftarrow v.\text{right}$   
 $x \leftarrow w.\text{left}$   
while  $x \neq \text{null}$  do  
   $w \leftarrow x$   
   $x \leftarrow x.\text{left}$   
return  $w$ 
```

Analysis

Deletion of an element v from a tree T requires $\mathcal{O}(h(T))$ fundamental steps:

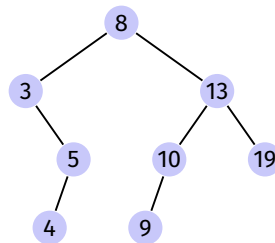
- Finding v has costs $\mathcal{O}(h(T))$
- If v has maximal one child unequal to **null** then removal takes $\mathcal{O}(1)$ steps
- Finding the symmetric successor n of v takes $\mathcal{O}(h(T))$ steps. Removal and insertion of n takes $\mathcal{O}(1)$ steps.

458

459

Traversal possibilities

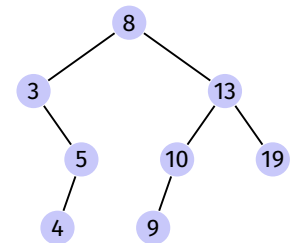
- preorder: v , then $T_{\text{left}}(v)$, then $T_{\text{right}}(v)$.
8, 3, 5, 4, 13, 10, 9, 19
- postorder: $T_{\text{left}}(v)$, then $T_{\text{right}}(v)$, then v .
4, 5, 3, 9, 10, 19, 13, 8
- inorder: $T_{\text{left}}(v)$, then v , then $T_{\text{right}}(v)$.
3, 4, 5, 8, 9, 10, 13, 19



460

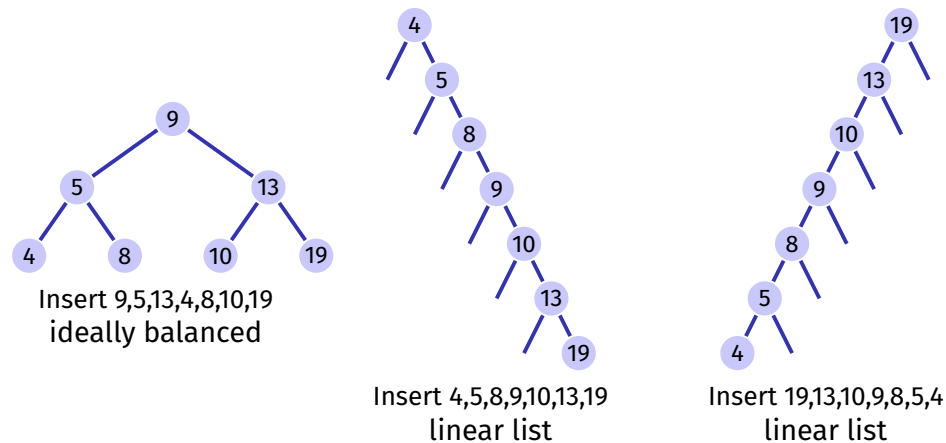
Further supported operations

- Min(T): Read-out minimal value in $\mathcal{O}(h)$
- ExtractMin(T): Read-out and remove minimal value in $\mathcal{O}(h)$
- List(T): Output the sorted list of elements
- Join(T_1, T_2): Merge two trees with $\max(T_1) < \min(T_2)$ in $\mathcal{O}(n)$.



461

Degenerated search trees



462

Probabilistically

A search tree constructed from a random sequence of numbers provides an expected path length of $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$.
 Attention: this only holds for insertions. If the tree is constructed by random insertions and deletions, the expected path length is $\mathcal{O}(\sqrt{n})$.
Balanced trees make sure (e.g. with *rotations*) during insertion or deletion that the tree stays balanced and provide a $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$ Worst-case guarantee.

463

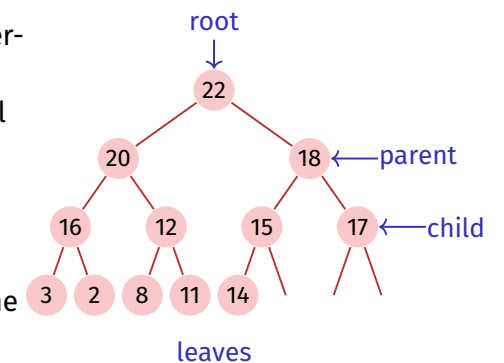
17. Heaps

Data structure optimized for fast extraction of minimum or maximum and for sorting. [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 2.3, Cormen et al, Kap. 6]

[Max-]Heap*

Binary tree with the following properties

1. complete up to the lowest level
2. Gaps (if any) of the tree in the last level to the right
3. Heap-Condition:
 Max-(Min-)Heap: key of a child smaller (greater) than that of the parent node



*Heap(data structure), not: as in "heap and stack" (memory allocation)

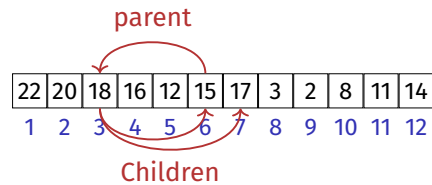
464

465

Heap as Array

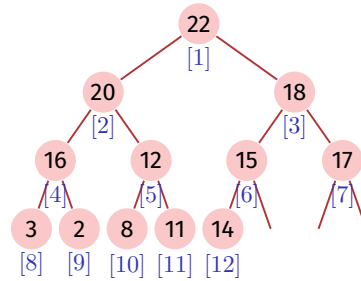
Tree → Array:

- $\text{children}(i) = \{2i, 2i + 1\}$
- $\text{parent}(i) = \lfloor i/2 \rfloor$



Depends on the starting index¹⁹

¹⁹For array that start at 0: $\{2i, 2i + 1\} \rightarrow \{2i + 1, 2i + 2\}$, $\lfloor i/2 \rfloor \rightarrow \lfloor (i - 1)/2 \rfloor$



Height of a Heap

What is the height $H(n)$ of Heap with n nodes? On the i -th level of a binary tree there are at most 2^i nodes. Up to the last level of a heap all levels are filled with values.

$$H(n) = \min\{h \in \mathbb{N} : \sum_{i=0}^{h-1} 2^i \geq n\}$$

with $\sum_{i=0}^{h-1} 2^i = 2^h - 1$:

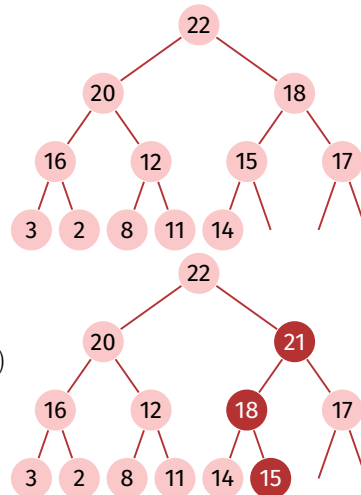
$$H(n) = \min\{h \in \mathbb{N} : 2^h \geq n + 1\},$$

thus

$$H(n) = \lceil \log_2(n + 1) \rceil.$$

Insert

- Insert new element at the first free position. Potentially violates the heap property.
- Reestablish heap property: climb successively
- Worst case number of operations: $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$



Algorithm Sift-Up(A, m)

Input: Array A with at least m elements and Max-Heap-Structure on $A[1, \dots, m - 1]$

Output: Array A with Max-Heap-Structure on $A[1, \dots, m]$.

$v \leftarrow A[m]$ // value

$c \leftarrow m$ // current position (child)

$p \leftarrow \lfloor c/2 \rfloor$ // parent node

while $c > 1$ and $v > A[p]$ **do**

$A[c] \leftarrow A[p]$ // Value parent node → current node

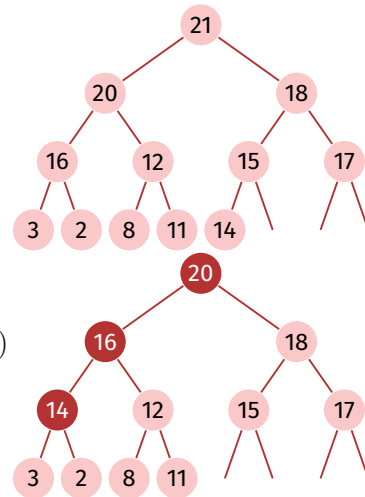
$c \leftarrow p$ // parent node → current node

$p \leftarrow \lfloor c/2 \rfloor$

$A[c] \leftarrow v$ // value → root of the (sub)tree

Remove the maximum

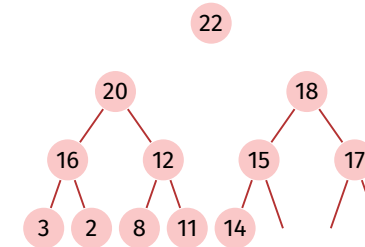
- Replace the maximum by the lower right element
- Reestablish heap property: sink successively (in the direction of the greater child)
- Worst case number of operations: $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$



470

Why this is correct: Recursive heap structure

A heap consists of two heaps:



471

Algorithm SiftDown(A, i, m)

Input: Array A with heap structure for the children of i . Last element m .

Output: Array A with heap structure for i with last element m .

```

while  $2i \leq m$  do
     $j \leftarrow 2i$ ; //  $j$  left child
    if  $j < m$  and  $A[j] < A[j + 1]$  then
         $j \leftarrow j + 1$ ; //  $j$  right child with greater key
    if  $A[i] < A[j]$  then
        swap( $A[i], A[j]$ )
         $i \leftarrow j$ ; // keep sinking down
    else
         $i \leftarrow m$ ; // sift down finished
    
```

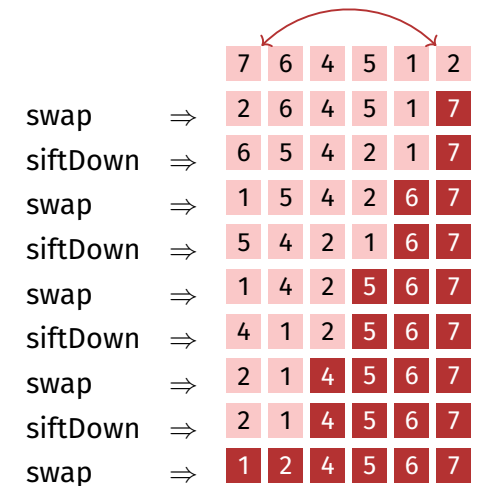
472

Sort heap

$A[1, \dots, n]$ is a Heap.

While $n > 1$

- swap($A[1], A[n]$)
- SiftDown($A, 1, n - 1$);
- $n \leftarrow n - 1$



473

Heap creation

Observation: Every leaf of a heap is trivially a correct heap.

Consequence: Induction from below!

Algorithm HeapSort(A, n)

Input: Array A with length n .

Output: A sorted.

// Build the heap.

for $i \leftarrow n/2$ **downto** 1 **do**

\perp SiftDown(A, i, n);

// Now A is a heap.

for $i \leftarrow n$ **downto** 2 **do**

\perp swap($A[1], A[i]$)

\perp SiftDown($A, 1, i - 1$)

// Now A is sorted.

474

Analysis: sorting a heap

SiftDown traverses at most $\log n$ nodes. For each node 2 key comparisons.

\Rightarrow sorting a heap costs in the worst case $2 \log n$ comparisons.

Number of memory movements of sorting a heap also $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$.

Analysis: creating a heap

Calls to siftDown: $n/2$.

Thus number of comparisons and movements: $v(n) \in \mathcal{O}(n \log n)$.

But mean length of the sift-down paths is much smaller:

We use that $h(n) = \lceil \log_2 n + 1 \rceil = \lfloor \log_2 n \rfloor + 1$ für $n > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} v(n) &= \sum_{l=0}^{\lfloor \log_2 n \rfloor} \underbrace{2^l}_{\text{number heaps on level } l} \cdot \underbrace{(\lfloor \log_2 n \rfloor + 1 - l - 1)}_{\text{height heaps on level } l} = \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \log_2 n \rfloor} 2^{\lfloor \log_2 n \rfloor - k} \cdot k \\ &= 2^{\lfloor \log_2 n \rfloor} \cdot \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \log_2 n \rfloor} \frac{k}{2^k} \leq n \cdot \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{k}{2^k} \leq n \cdot 2 \in \mathcal{O}(n) \end{aligned}$$

with $s(x) := \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} kx^k = \frac{x}{(1-x)^2}$ ($0 < x < 1$) and $s(\frac{1}{2}) = 2$

476

477

Disadvantages

Heapsort: $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$ Comparisons and movements.

Disadvantages of heapsort?

- ❗ Missing locality: heapsort jumps around in the sorted array (negative cache effect).
- ❗ Two comparisons required before each necessary memory movement.

478

Objective

Searching, insertion and removal of a key in a tree generated from n keys inserted in random order takes expected number of steps $\mathcal{O}(\log_2 n)$.

But worst case $\Theta(n)$ (degenerated tree).

Goal: avoidance of degeneration. Artificial balancing of the tree for each update-operation of a tree.

Balancing: guarantee that a tree with n nodes always has a height of $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$.

Adelson-Venskii and Landis (1962): AVL-Trees

480

18. AVL Trees

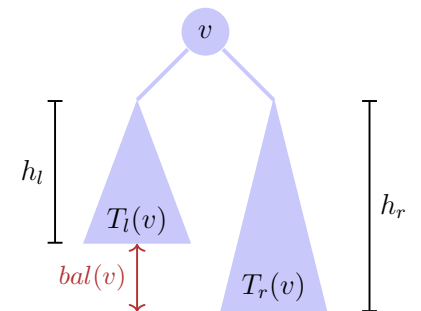
Balanced Trees [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 5.2-5.2.1, Cormen et al, Kap. Problem 13-3]

479

Balance of a node

The height balance of a node v is defined as the height difference of its sub-trees $T_l(v)$ and $T_r(v)$

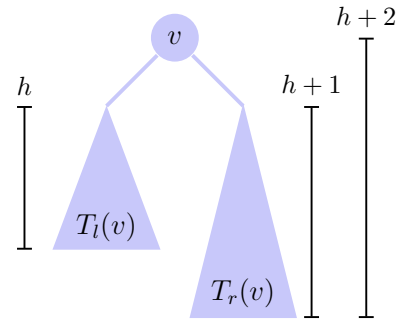
$$\text{bal}(v) := h(T_r(v)) - h(T_l(v))$$



481

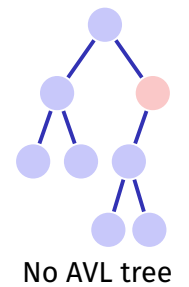
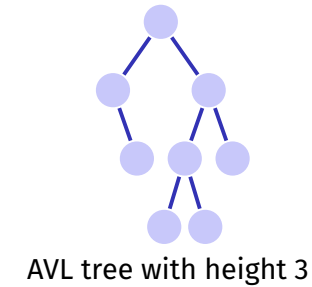
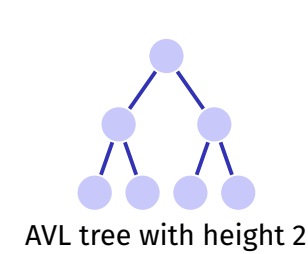
AVL Condition

AVL Condition: for each node v of a tree
 $\text{bal}(v) \in \{-1, 0, 1\}$



482

(Counter-)Examples



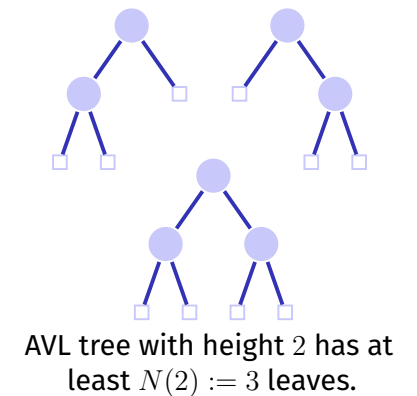
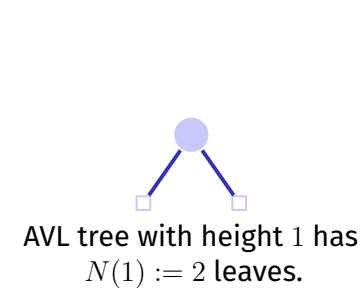
483

Number of Leaves

- 1. observation: a binary search tree with n keys provides exactly $n + 1$ leaves. Simple induction argument.
 - The binary search tree with $n = 0$ keys has $m = 1$ leaves
 - When a key is added ($n \rightarrow n + 1$), then it replaces a leaf and adds two new leafs ($m \rightarrow m - 1 + 2 = m + 1$).
- 2. observation: a lower bound of the number of leaves in a search tree with given height implies an upper bound of the height of a search tree with given number of keys.

484

Lower bound of the leaves



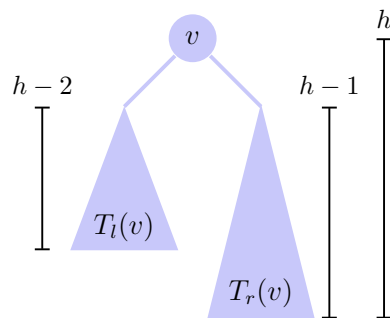
485

Lower bound of the leaves for $h > 2$

- Height of one subtree $\geq h - 1$.
- Height of the other subtree $\geq h - 2$.

Minimal number of leaves $N(h)$ is

$$N(h) = N(h - 1) + N(h - 2)$$



Overall we have $N(h) = F_{h+2}$ with Fibonacci-numbers $F_0 := 0, F_1 := 1, F_n := F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}$ for $n > 1$.

486

Fibonacci Numbers, Inductive Proof

$$F_i \stackrel{!}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\phi^i - \hat{\phi}^i) \quad [*] \quad \left(\phi = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}, \hat{\phi} = \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right).$$

1. Immediate for $i = 0, i = 1$.
2. Let $i > 2$ and claim $[*]$ true for all $F_j, j < i$.

$$\begin{aligned} F_i &\stackrel{def}{=} F_{i-1} + F_{i-2} \stackrel{[*]}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\phi^{i-1} - \hat{\phi}^{i-1}) + \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\phi^{i-2} - \hat{\phi}^{i-2}) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\phi^{i-1} + \phi^{i-2}) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\hat{\phi}^{i-1} + \hat{\phi}^{i-2}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\phi^{i-2}(\phi + 1) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\hat{\phi}^{i-2}(\hat{\phi} + 1) \end{aligned}$$

$(\phi, \hat{\phi}$ fulfil $x + 1 = x^2$)

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\phi^{i-2}(\phi^2) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\hat{\phi}^{i-2}(\hat{\phi}^2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\phi^i - \hat{\phi}^i).$$

488

Fibonacci Numbers, closed Form

It holds that²⁰

$$F_i = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\phi^i - \hat{\phi}^i)$$

with the roots $\phi, \hat{\phi}$ of the golden ratio equation $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$:

$$\phi = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \approx 1.618$$

$$\hat{\phi} = \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \approx -0.618$$

²⁰Derivation using generating functions (power series) in the appendix.

487

Tree Height

Because $|\hat{\phi}| < 1$, overall we have

$$N(h) \in \Theta\left(\left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^h\right) \subseteq \Omega(1.618^h)$$

and thus

$$\begin{aligned} N(h) &\geq c \cdot 1.618^h \\ \Rightarrow h &\leq 1.44 \log_2 n + c'. \end{aligned}$$

An AVL tree is asymptotically not more than 44% higher than a perfectly balanced tree.²¹

²¹The perfectly balanced tree has a height of $\lceil \log_2 n + 1 \rceil$

489

Insertion

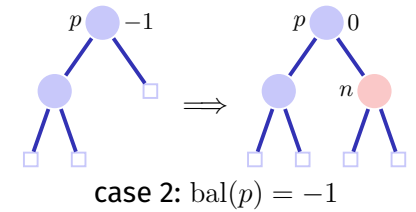
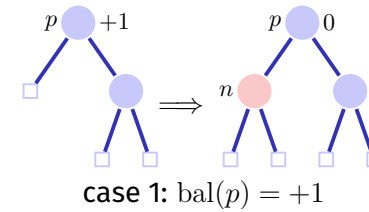
Balance

- Keep the balance stored in each node
- Re-balance the tree in each update-operation

New node n is inserted:

- Insert the node as for a search tree.
- Check the balance condition increasing from n to the root.

Balance at Insertion Point

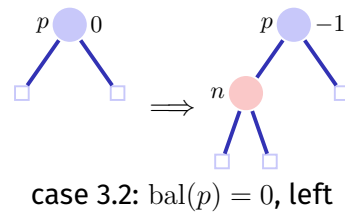
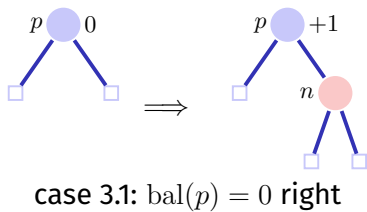


Finished in both cases because the subtree height did not change

490

491

Balance at Insertion Point



Not finished in both case. Call of $\text{upin}(p)$

$\text{upin}(p)$ - invariant

When $\text{upin}(p)$ is called it holds that

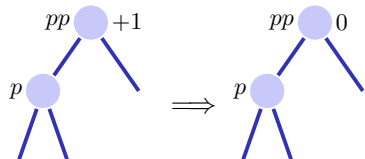
- the subtree from p is grown and
- $\text{bal}(p) \in \{-1, +1\}$

492

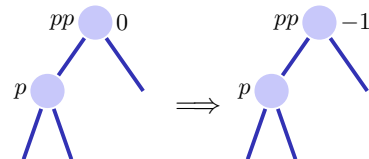
493

upin(p)

Assumption: p is left son of pp ²²



case 1: $\text{bal}(pp) = +1$, done.



case 2: $\text{bal}(pp) = 0$, **upin(pp)**

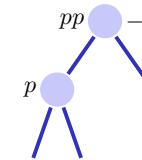
In both cases the AVL-Condition holds for the subtree from pp

²²If p is a right son: symmetric cases with exchange of $+1$ and -1

494

upin(p)

Assumption: p is left son of pp



case 3: $\text{bal}(pp) = -1$,

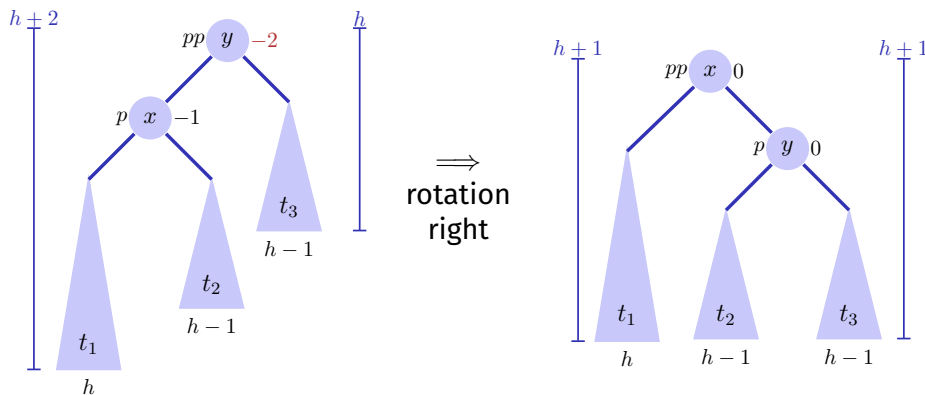
This case is problematic: adding n to the subtree from pp has violated the AVL-condition. Re-balance!

Two cases $\text{bal}(p) = -1$, $\text{bal}(p) = +1$

495

Rotations

case 1.1 $\text{bal}(p) = -1$.²³

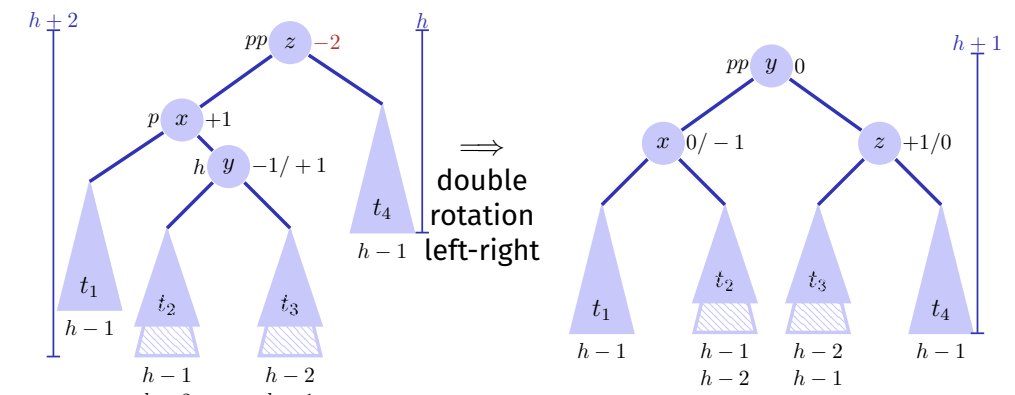


²³ p right son: $\Rightarrow \text{bal}(pp) = \text{bal}(p) = +1$, left rotation

496

Rotations

case 1.2 $\text{bal}(p) = +1$.²⁴



²⁴ p right son $\Rightarrow \text{bal}(pp) = +1$, $\text{bal}(p) = -1$, double rotation right left

497

Analysis

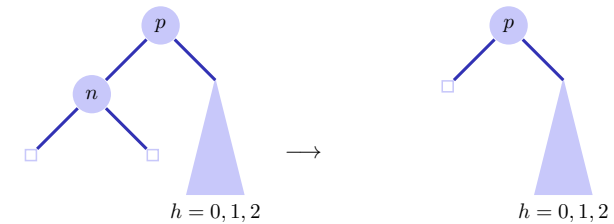
- Tree height: $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$.
- Insertion like in binary search tree.
- Balancing via recursion from node to the root. Maximal path length $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$.

Insertion in an AVL-tree provides run time costs of $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$.

Deletion

Case 1: Children of node n are both leaves Let p be parent node of n . \Rightarrow Other subtree has height $h' = 0, 1$ or 2 .

- $h' = 1$: Adapt $\text{bal}(p)$.
- $h' = 0$: Adapt $\text{bal}(p)$. Call $\text{upout}(p)$.
- $h' = 2$: Rebalanciere des Teilbaumes. Call $\text{upout}(p)$.



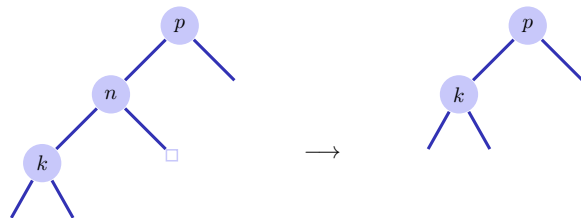
498

499

Deletion

Case 2: one child k of node n is an inner node

- Replace n by k . $\text{upout}(k)$



500

Deletion

Case 3: both children of node n are inner nodes

- Replace n by symmetric successor. $\text{upout}(k)$
- Deletion of the symmetric successor is as in case 1 or 2.

501

upout (p)

Let pp be the parent node of p .

(a) p left child of pp

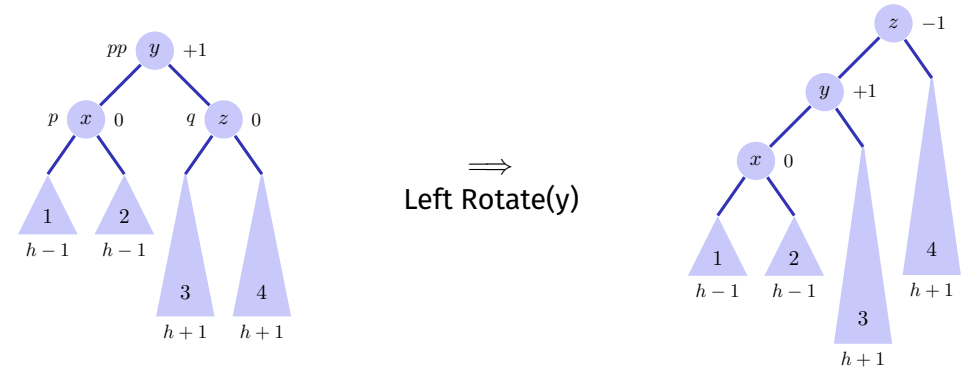
1. $\text{bal}(pp) = -1 \Rightarrow \text{bal}(pp) \leftarrow 0$. **upout (pp)**
2. $\text{bal}(pp) = 0 \Rightarrow \text{bal}(pp) \leftarrow +1$.
3. $\text{bal}(pp) = +1 \Rightarrow$ next slides.

(b) p right child of pp : Symmetric cases exchanging $+1$ and -1 .

upout (p)

Case (a).3: $\text{bal}(pp) = +1$. Let q be brother of p

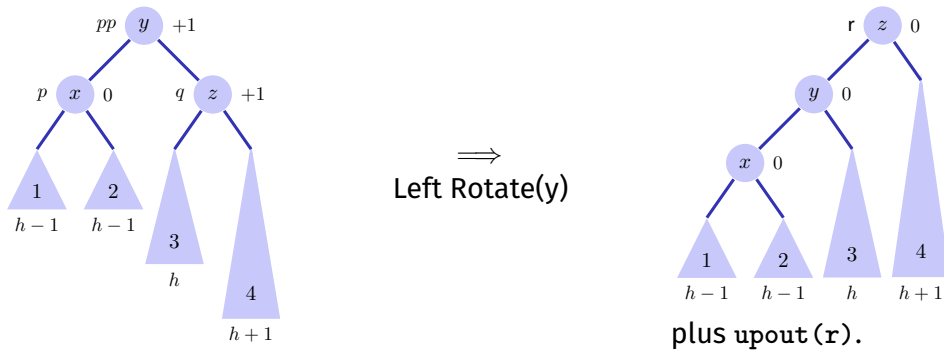
(a).3.1: $\text{bal}(q) = 0$.²⁵



²⁵(b).3.1: $\text{bal}(pp) = -1$, $\text{bal}(q) = -1$, Right rotation

upout (p)

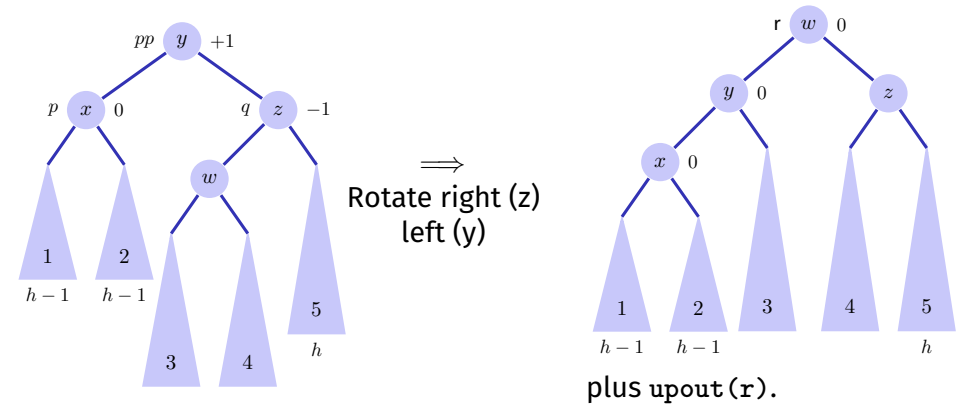
Case (a).3: $\text{bal}(pp) = +1$. (a).3.2: $\text{bal}(q) = +1$.²⁶



²⁶(b).3.2: $\text{bal}(pp) = -1$, $\text{bal}(q) = +1$, Right rotation+upout

upout (p)

Case (a).3: $\text{bal}(pp) = +1$. (a).3.3: $\text{bal}(q) = -1$.²⁷



²⁷(b).3.3: $\text{bal}(pp) = -1$, $\text{bal}(q) = -1$, left-right rotation + upout

Conclusion

- AVL trees have worst-case asymptotic runtimes of $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$ for searching, insertion and deletion of keys.
- Insertion and deletion is relatively involved and an overkill for really small problems.

506

[Fibonacci Numbers: closed form]

Closed form of the Fibonacci numbers: computation via generation functions:

1. Power series approach

$$f(x) := \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} F_i \cdot x^i$$

508

18.5 Appendix

Derivation of some mathematical formulas

507

[Fibonacci Numbers: closed form]

2. For Fibonacci Numbers it holds that $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$,
 $F_i = F_{i-1} + F_{i-2} \forall i > 1$. Therefore:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= x + \sum_{i=2}^{\infty} F_i \cdot x^i = x + \sum_{i=2}^{\infty} F_{i-1} \cdot x^i + \sum_{i=2}^{\infty} F_{i-2} \cdot x^i \\ &= x + x \sum_{i=2}^{\infty} F_{i-1} \cdot x^{i-1} + x^2 \sum_{i=2}^{\infty} F_{i-2} \cdot x^{i-2} \\ &= x + x \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} F_i \cdot x^i + x^2 \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} F_i \cdot x^i \\ &= x + x \cdot f(x) + x^2 \cdot f(x). \end{aligned}$$

509

[Fibonacci Numbers: closed form]

3. Thus:

$$f(x) \cdot (1 - x - x^2) = x.$$

$$\Leftrightarrow f(x) = \frac{x}{1 - x - x^2} = -\frac{x}{x^2 + x - 1}$$

with the roots $-\phi$ and $-\hat{\phi}$ of $x^2 + x - 1$,

$$\phi = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \approx 1.6, \quad \hat{\phi} = \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \approx -0.6.$$

it holds that $\phi \cdot \hat{\phi} = -1$ and thus

$$f(x) = -\frac{x}{(x + \phi) \cdot (x + \hat{\phi})} = \frac{x}{(1 - \phi x) \cdot (1 - \hat{\phi} x)}$$

510

[Fibonacci Numbers: closed form]

4. It holds that:

$$(1 - \hat{\phi} x) - (1 - \phi x) = \sqrt{5} \cdot x.$$

Damit:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \frac{(1 - \hat{\phi} x) - (1 - \phi x)}{(1 - \phi x) \cdot (1 - \hat{\phi} x)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left(\frac{1}{1 - \phi x} - \frac{1}{1 - \hat{\phi} x} \right)$$

511

[Fibonacci Numbers: closed form]

5. Power series of $g_a(x) = \frac{1}{1 - a \cdot x}$ ($a \in \mathbb{R}$):

$$\frac{1}{1 - a \cdot x} = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a^i \cdot x^i.$$

E.g. Taylor series of $g_a(x)$ at $x = 0$ or like this: Let $\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} G_i \cdot x^i$ a power series of g . By the identity $g_a(x)(1 - a \cdot x) = 1$ it holds that for all x (within the radius of convergence)

$$1 = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} G_i \cdot x^i - a \cdot \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} G_i \cdot x^{i+1} = G_0 + \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (G_i - a \cdot G_{i-1}) \cdot x^i$$

For $x = 0$ it follows $G_0 = 1$ and for $x \neq 0$ it follows then that $G_i = a \cdot G_{i-1} \Rightarrow G_i = a^i$.

512

[Fibonacci Numbers: closed form]

6. Fill in the power series:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left(\frac{1}{1 - \phi x} - \frac{1}{1 - \hat{\phi} x} \right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left(\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \phi^i x^i - \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \hat{\phi}^i x^i \right)$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} (\phi^i - \hat{\phi}^i) x^i$$

Comparison of the coefficients with $f(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} F_i \cdot x^i$ yields

$$F_i = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} (\phi^i - \hat{\phi}^i).$$

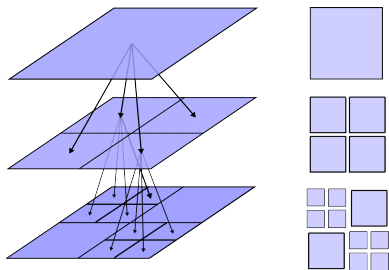
513

19. Quadrees

Quadtrees, Collision Detection, Image Segmentation

Quadtree - Interpretation und Nutzen

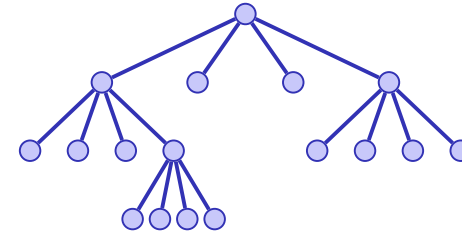
Separation of a two-dimensional range into 4 equally sized parts.



[analogously in three dimensions with an *octtree* (tree of order 8)]

Quadtree

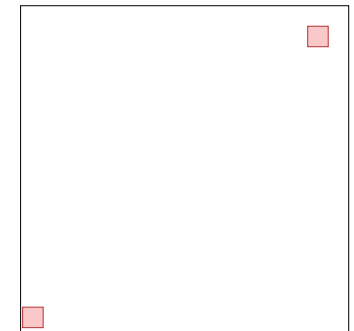
A quad tree is a tree of order 4.



... and as such it is not particularly interesting except when it is used for ...

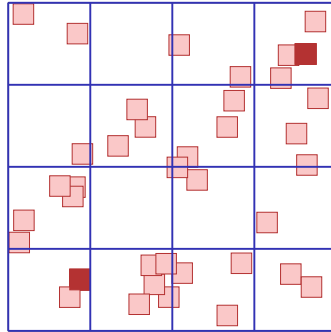
Example 1: Collision Detection

- Objects in the 2D-plane, e.g. particle simulation on the screen.
- Goal: collision detection



Idea

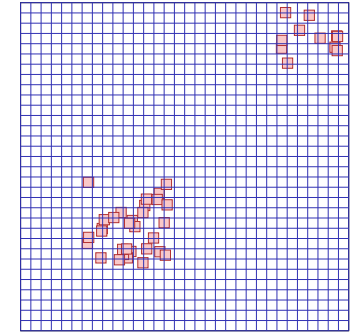
- Many objects: n^2 detections (naively)
- Improvement?
- Obviously: collision detection not required for objects far away from each other
- What is „far away“?
- Grid ($m \times m$)
- Collision detection per grid cell



518

Grids

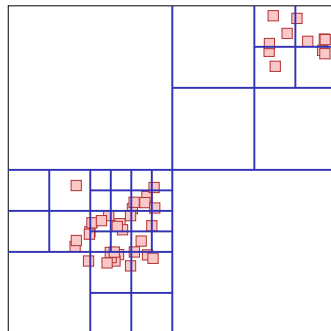
- A grid often helps, but not always
- Improvement?
- More finegrained grid?
- Too many grid cells!



519

Adaptive Grids

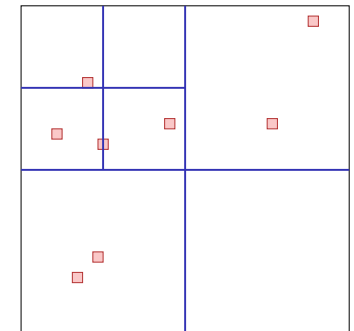
- A grid often helps, but not always
- Improvement?
- *Adaptively* refine grid
- Quadtree!



520

Algorithm: Insertion

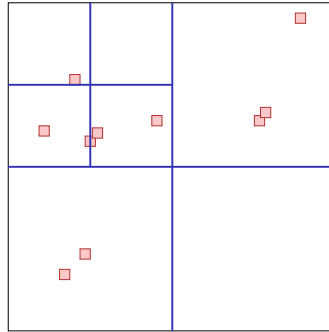
- Quadtree starts with a single node
- Objects are added to the node. When a node contains too many objects, the node is split.
- Objects that are on the boundary of the quadtree remain in the higher level node.



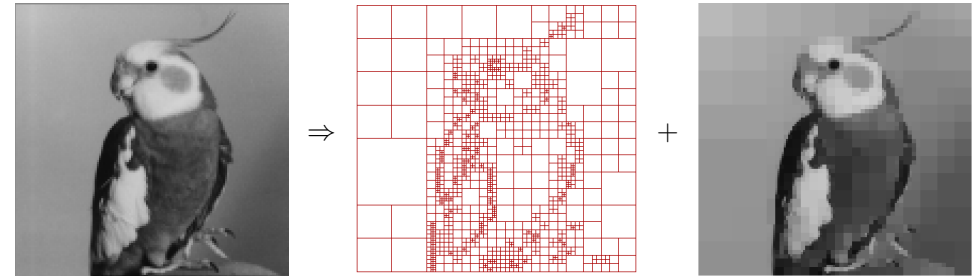
521

Algorithm: Collision Detection

- Run through the quadtree in a recursive way. For each node test collision with all objects contained in the same or (recursively) contained nodes.



Example 2: Image Segmentation

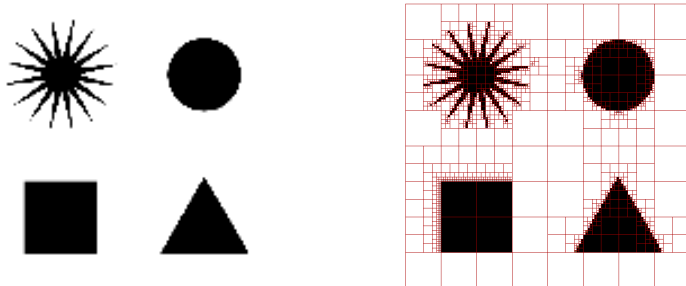


(Possible applications: compression, denoising, edge detection)

522

523

Quadtree on Monochrome Bitmap

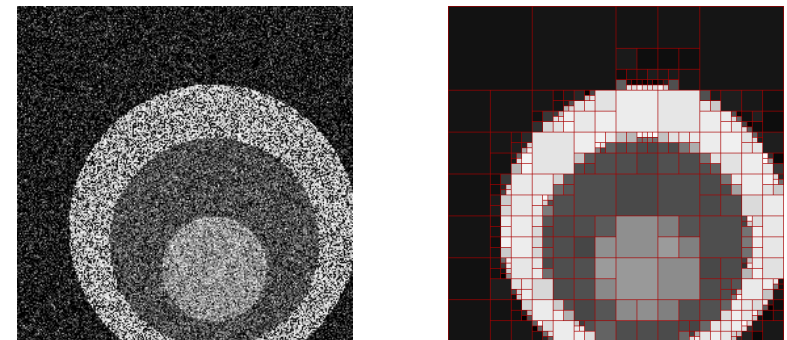


Similar procedure to generate the quadtree: split nodes recursively until each node only contains pixels of the same color.

524

Quadtree with Approximation

When there are more than two color values, the quadtree can get very large. \Rightarrow Compressed representation: *approximate* the image piecewise constant on the rectangles of a quadtree.



525

Piecewise Constant Approximation

(Grey-value) Image $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^S$ on pixel indices S .²⁸

Rectangle $r \subset S$.

Goal: determine

$$\arg \min_{v \in \mathbb{R}} \sum_{s \in r} (y_s - v)^2$$

Solution: the arithmetic mean $\mu_r = \frac{1}{|r|} \sum_{s \in r} y_s$

²⁸we assume that S is a square with side length 2^k for some $k \geq 0$

Which Quadtree?

Conflict

- As close as possible to the data \Rightarrow small rectangles, large quadtree .
Extreme case: one node per pixel. Approximation = original
- Small amount of nodes \Rightarrow large rectangles, small quadtree
Extreme case: a single rectangle. Approximation = a single grey value.

Intermediate Result

The (w.r.t. mean squared error) best approximation

$$\mu_r = \frac{1}{|r|} \sum_{s \in r} y_s$$

and the corresponding error

$$\sum_{s \in r} (y_s - \mu_r)^2 =: \|\mathbf{y}_r - \boldsymbol{\mu}_r\|_2^2$$

can be computed quickly after a $\mathcal{O}(|S|)$ tabulation: prefix sums!

Which Quadtree?

Idea: choose between data fidelity and complexity with a regularisation parameter $\gamma \geq 0$

Choose quadtree T with leaves²⁹ $L(T)$ such that it minimizes the following function

$$H_\gamma(T, \mathbf{y}) := \gamma \cdot \underbrace{|L(T)|}_{\text{Number of Leaves}} + \underbrace{\sum_{r \in L(T)} \|\mathbf{y}_r - \boldsymbol{\mu}_r\|_2^2}_{\text{Cumulative approximation error of all leaves}} .$$

²⁹here: leaf: node with null-children

Regularisation

Let T be a quadtree over a rectangle S_T and let $T_{ll}, T_{lr}, T_{ul}, T_{ur}$ be the four possible sub-trees and

$$\widehat{H}_\gamma(T, y) := \min_T \gamma \cdot |L(T)| + \sum_{r \in L(T)} \|y_r - \mu_r\|_2^2$$

Extreme cases:

$\gamma = 0 \Rightarrow$ original data;

$\gamma \rightarrow \infty \Rightarrow$ a single rectangle

Observation: Recursion

- If the (sub-)quadtree T represents only one pixel, then it cannot be split and it holds that

$$\widehat{H}_\gamma(T, y) = \gamma$$

- Let, otherwise,

$$M_1 := \gamma + \|y_{S_T} - \mu_{S_T}\|_2^2$$

$$M_2 := \widehat{H}_\gamma(T_{ll}, y) + \widehat{H}_\gamma(T_{lr}, y) + \widehat{H}_\gamma(T_{ul}, y) + \widehat{H}_\gamma(T_{ur}, y)$$

then

$$\widehat{H}_\gamma(T, y) = \min \left\{ \underbrace{M_1(T, \gamma, y)}_{\text{no split}}, \underbrace{M_2(T, \gamma, y)}_{\text{split}} \right\}$$

530

531

Algorithmus: Minimize(y, r, γ)

Input: Image data $y \in \mathbb{R}^S$, rectangle $r \subset S$, regularization $\gamma > 0$

Output: $\min_T \gamma |L(T)| + \|y - \mu_{L(T)}\|_2^2$

if $|r| = 0$ **then return** 0

$m \leftarrow \gamma + \sum_{s \in r} (y_s - \mu_r)^2$

if $|r| > 1$ **then**

 Split r into $r_{ll}, r_{lr}, r_{ul}, r_{ur}$

$m_1 \leftarrow \text{Minimize}(y, r_{ll}, \gamma)$; $m_2 \leftarrow \text{Minimize}(y, r_{lr}, \gamma)$

$m_3 \leftarrow \text{Minimize}(y, r_{ul}, \gamma)$; $m_4 \leftarrow \text{Minimize}(y, r_{ur}, \gamma)$

$m' \leftarrow m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + m_4$

else

$m' \leftarrow \infty$

if $m' < m$ **then** $m \leftarrow m'$

return m

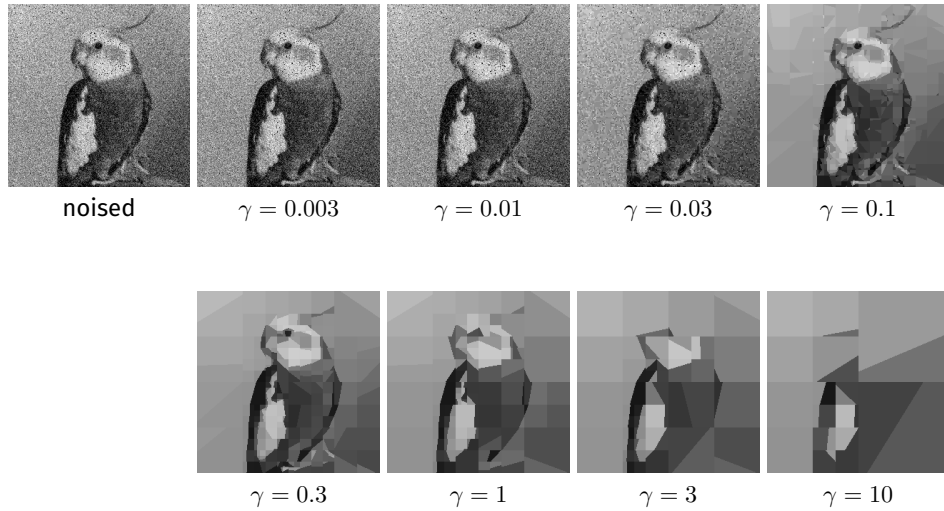
Analysis

The minimization algorithm over dyadic partitions (quadtrees) takes $\mathcal{O}(|S| \log |S|)$ steps.

532

533

Application: Denoising (with additional Wedgelets)



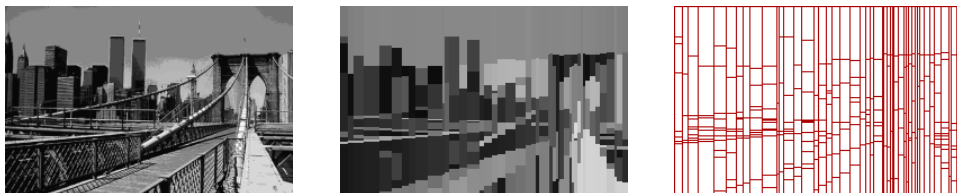
534

Extensions: Affine Regression + Wedgelets



Other ideas

no quadtree: hierarchical one-dimensional model (requires dynamic programming)



19.1 Appendix

Linear Regression

537

The Learning Problem

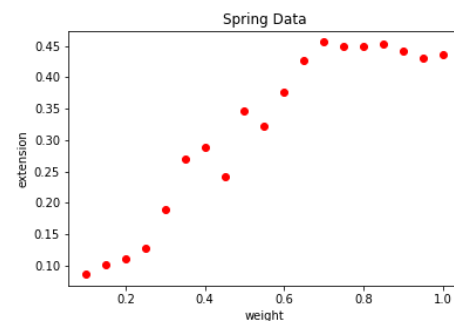
Setup

- We observe N data points
- Input examples: $\mathbf{X} = (\mathbf{X}_1, \dots, \mathbf{X}_N)^\top$
- Output examples: $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, \dots, y_N)^\top$
- Assupmtion: there is an underlying truth

$$f: \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}$$

Goal: find a good approximation $h \approx g$ to make predictions $h(\mathbf{x})$ for new data points or to explain the data in order to find a compressed representation, for instance.

Here $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}^d$. $\mathcal{Y} = \mathbb{R}$ (Regression).



538

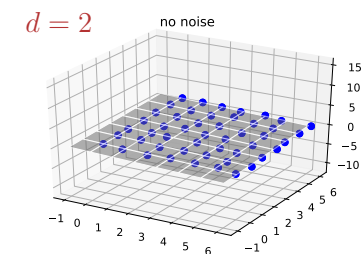
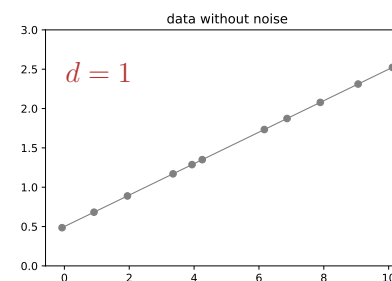
Model: Linear Regression

Assumption: The underlying truth can be represented as

$$h_{\mathbf{w}}(\mathbf{x}) = w_0 + w_1x_1 + \dots + w_dx_d = w_0 + \sum_{i=1}^d w_ix_i.$$

\Rightarrow We search for \mathbf{w} (sometimes also d).

linear in \mathbf{w} !



539

Trick for simplified notation

$$\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_d) \rightarrow (\underbrace{x_0}_{\equiv 1}, x_1, \dots, x_d)$$

$$\begin{aligned} h_{\mathbf{w}}(\mathbf{x}) &= w_0x_0 + w_1x_1 + \dots + w_dx_d \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^d w_ix_i \\ &= \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} \end{aligned}$$

540

Data matrix

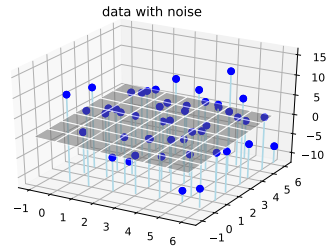
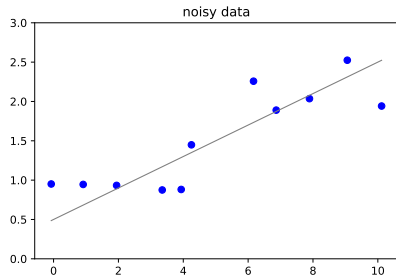
$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{X}_1 \\ \mathbf{X}_2 \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{X}_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \overset{\equiv 1}{\downarrow} X_{1,0} & X_{1,1} & X_{1,2} & \dots & X_{1,d} \\ X_{2,0} & X_{2,1} & X_{2,2} & \dots & X_{2,d} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ X_{n,0} & X_{n,1} & X_{n,2} & \dots & X_{n,d} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} w_1 \\ \vdots \\ w_d \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} \approx \mathbf{y}?$$

541

Imprecise observations

Reality: the data are imprecise or the model is only a model.



What to do?

Solution from Linear Algebra

$$\widehat{\mathbf{w}} = \underbrace{(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top}_{=:\mathbf{X}^\dagger} \mathbf{y}.$$

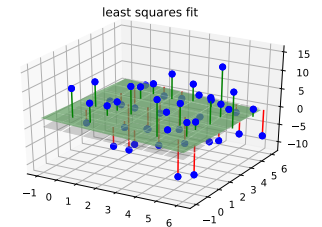
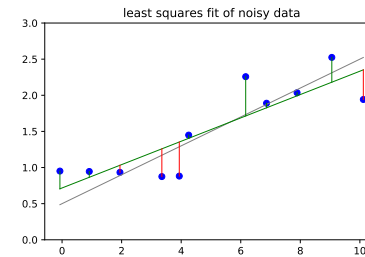
\mathbf{X}^\dagger : Moore-Penroe Pseudo-Inverse

Error function

$$E(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{i=1}^N (h_{\mathbf{w}}(\mathbf{X}_i) - y_i)^2$$

Want a $\widehat{\mathbf{w}}$ that minimizes E

Linearity of $h_{\mathbf{w}}$ in $\mathbf{w} \Rightarrow$ solution with linear algebra.



Fitting Polynomials

Also works with linear regression.

$$h_{\mathbf{w}}(x) = w_0 + w_1 x^1 + w_2 x^2 + \cdots + w_d x^d = w_0 + \sum_{i=1}^d w_i x^i.$$

because $h_{\mathbf{w}}(x)$ remains being linear in \mathbf{w} !

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x_1 & (x_1)^2 & \cdots & (x_1)^d \\ 1 & x_2 & (x_2)^2 & \cdots & (x_2)^d \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & x_n & (x_n)^2 & \cdots & (x_n)^d \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} w_0 \\ \vdots \\ w_d \end{bmatrix}$$

Example: Constant Approximation

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{w} = [w_0]$$
$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} = \left[\frac{1}{n} \sum y_i \right].$$

546

Example: Linear Approximation

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x_1^{(1)} & x_1^{(2)} \\ 1 & x_2^{(1)} & x_2^{(2)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & x_n^{(1)} & x_n^{(2)} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{w} = [w_0]$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} N & \sum x_i^{(1)} & \sum x_i^{(2)} \\ \sum x_i^{(1)} & \sum (x_i^{(1)})^2 & \sum x_i^{(1)} \cdot x_i^{(2)} \\ \sum x_i^{(2)} & \sum x_i^{(1)} \cdot x_i^{(2)} & \sum (x_i^{(2)})^2 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \sum y_i \\ \sum y_i \cdot x_i^{(1)} \\ \sum y_i \cdot x_i^{(2)} \end{bmatrix}$$

547

20. Dynamic Programming I

Memoization, Optimal Substructure, Overlapping Sub-Problems, Dependencies, General Procedure. Examples: Fibonacci, Rod Cutting, Longest Ascending Subsequence, Longest Common Subsequence, Edit Distance, Matrix Chain Multiplication (Strassen)
[Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 1.2.3, 7.1, 7.4, Cormen et al, Kap. 15]

548

Fibonacci Numbers



(again)

$$F_n := \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n < 2 \\ F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} & \text{if } n \geq 2. \end{cases}$$

Analysis: why ist the recursive algorithm so slow?

549

Algorithm FibonacciRecursive(n)

Input: $n \geq 0$

Output: n -th Fibonacci number

if $n < 2$ **then**

$f \leftarrow n$

else

$f \leftarrow \text{FibonacciRecursive}(n - 1) + \text{FibonacciRecursive}(n - 2)$

return f

Analysis

$T(n)$: Number executed operations.

■ $n = 0, 1: T(n) = \Theta(1)$

■ $n \geq 2: T(n) = T(n - 2) + T(n - 1) + c.$

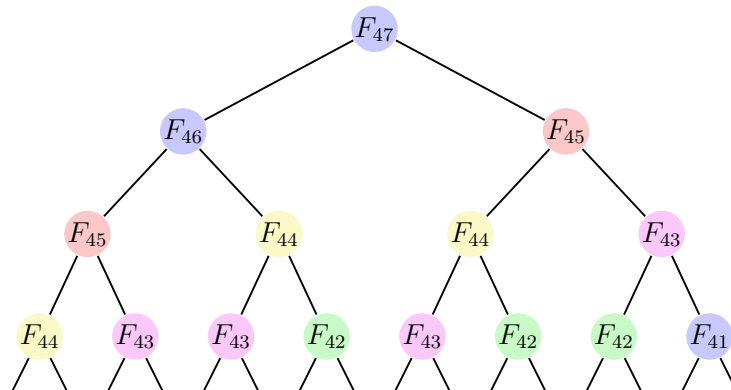
$$T(n) = T(n - 2) + T(n - 1) + c \geq 2T(n - 2) + c \geq 2^{n/2}c' = (\sqrt{2})^n c'$$

Algorithm is exponential in n .

550

551

Reason (visual)



Nodes with same values are evaluated (too) often.

552

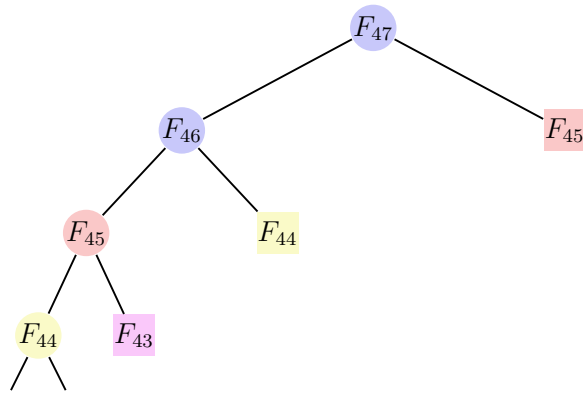
Memoization

Memoization (sic) saving intermediate results.

- Before a subproblem is solved, the existence of the corresponding intermediate result is checked.
- If an intermediate result exists then it is used.
- Otherwise the algorithm is executed and the result is saved accordingly.

553

Memoization with Fibonacci



Rectangular nodes have been computed before.

Algorithm FibonacciMemoization(n)

Input: $n \geq 0$

Output: n -th Fibonacci number

if $n \leq 2$ **then**

$f \leftarrow 1$

else if $\exists \text{memo}[n]$ **then**

$f \leftarrow \text{memo}[n]$

else

$f \leftarrow \text{FibonacciMemoization}(n-1) + \text{FibonacciMemoization}(n-2)$

$\text{memo}[n] \leftarrow f$

return f

Analysis

Computational complexity:

$$T(n) = T(n-1) + c = \dots = \mathcal{O}(n).$$

because after the call to $f(n-1)$, $f(n-2)$ has already been computed.

A different argument: $f(n)$ is computed exactly once recursively for each n .

Runtime costs: n calls with $\Theta(1)$ costs per call $n \cdot c \in \Theta(n)$. The recursion vanishes from the running time computation.

Algorithm requires $\Theta(n)$ memory.³⁰

Looking closer ...

... the algorithm computes the values of F_1, F_2, F_3, \dots in the top-down approach of the recursion.

Can write the algorithm bottom-up. This is characteristic for dynamic programming.

³⁰But the naive recursive algorithm also requires $\Theta(n)$ memory implicitly.

Algorithm FibonacciBottomUp(n)

Input: $n \geq 0$

Output: n -th Fibonacci number

```
 $F[1] \leftarrow 1$   
 $F[2] \leftarrow 1$   
for  $i \leftarrow 3, \dots, n$  do  
   $F[i] \leftarrow F[i-1] + F[i-2]$   
return  $F[n]$ 
```

Dynamic Programming: Idea

- Divide a complex problem into a reasonable number of sub-problems
- The solution of the sub-problems will be used to solve the more complex problem
- Identical problems will be computed only once

558

559

Dynamic Programming Consequence

Identical problems will be computed only once

⇒ Results are saved



192-
HyperX Fury (2x 8GB,
DDR4-2400, DIMM 288)
★★★★★ 16

We trade speed against
memory consumption

Dynamic Programming: Description

1. Use a DP-table with information to the subproblems.
Dimension of the table? Semantics of the entries?
2. Computation of the base cases.
Which entries do not depend on others?
3. Determine computation order.
In which order can the entries be computed such that dependencies are fulfilled?
4. Read-out the solution
How can the solution be read out from the table?

Runtime (typical) = number entries of the table times required operations per entry.

560

561

Dynamic Programming: Description with the example

1. Dimension of the table? Semantics of the entries?
 $n \times 1$ table. n th entry contains n th Fibonacci number.
2. Which entries do not depend on other entries?
 Values F_1 and F_2 can be computed easily and independently.
3. Computation order?
 F_i with increasing i .
4. Reconstruction of a solution?
 F_n is the n -th Fibonacci number.

562

Dynamic Programming = Divide-And-Conquer ?

- In both cases the original problem can be solved (more easily) by utilizing the solutions of sub-problems. The problem provides **optimal substructure**.
- Divide-And-Conquer algorithms (such as Mergesort): sub-problems are independent; their solutions are required only once in the algorithm.
- DP: sub-problems are dependent. The problem is said to have **overlapping sub-problems** that are required multiple-times in the algorithm.
- In order to avoid redundant computations, results are tabulated. For **sub-problems there must not be any circular dependencies**.

563

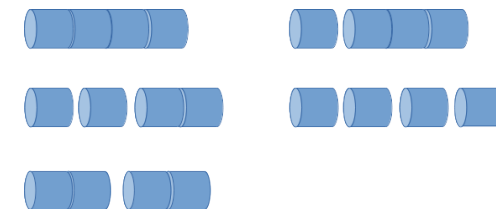
Rod Cutting

- Rods (metal sticks) are cut and sold.
- Rods of length $n \in \mathbb{N}$ are available. A cut does not provide any costs.
- For each length $l \in \mathbb{N}$, $l \leq n$ known is the value $v_l \in \mathbb{R}^+$
- Goal: cut the rods such (into $k \in \mathbb{N}$ pieces) that

$$\sum_{i=1}^k v_{l_i} \text{ is maximized subject to } \sum_{i=1}^k l_i = n.$$

564

Rod Cutting: Example



Possibilities to cut a rod of length 4 (without permutations)

Length	0	1	2	3	4
Price	0	2	3	8	9

⇒ Best cut: 3 + 1 with value 10.

565

How to Find the DP Algorithm.

- 0. Exact formulation of the wanted solution
 - 1. Define sub-problems (and compute the cardinality)
 - 2. Guess / Enumerate (and determine the running time for guessing)
 - 3. Recursion: relate sub-problems
 - 4. Memoize / Tabularize. Determine the dependencies of the sub-problems
 - 5. Solve the problem
- Running time = #sub-problems \times time/sub-problem

566

Algorithm RodCut(v, n)

Input: $n \geq 0$, Prices v

Output: best value

$$q \leftarrow 0$$

if $n > 0$ **then**

for $i \leftarrow 1, \dots, n$ **do**
$$q \leftarrow \max\{q, v_i + \text{RodCut}(v, n - i)\};$$
return q

Running time $T(n) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} T(i) + c \Rightarrow^{31} T(n) \in \Theta(2^n)$

$${}^{31}T(n) = T(n-1) + \sum_{i=0}^{n-2} T(i) + c = T(n-1) + (T(n-1) - c) + c = 2T(n-1) \quad (n > 0)$$

568

Structure of the problem

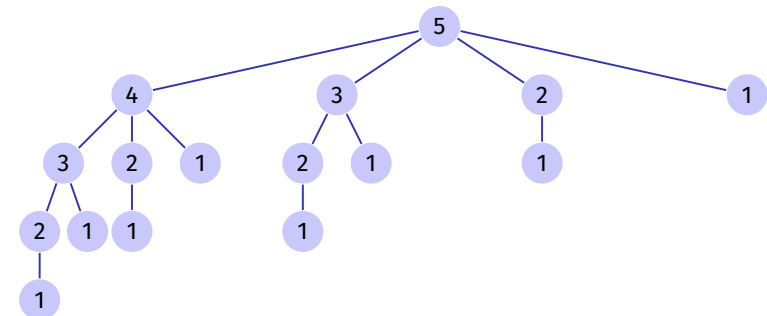
- 0. Wanted: r_n = maximal value of rod (cut or as a whole) with length n .
- 1. sub-problems: maximal value r_k for each $0 \leq k < n$
- 2. Guess the length of the first piece
- 3. Recursion

$$\begin{aligned} r_k &= \max\{v_i + r_{k-i} : 0 < i \leq k\}, \quad k > 0 \\ r_0 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

4. Dependency: r_k depends (only) on values $v_i, 1 \leq i \leq k$ and the optimal cuts $r_i, i < k$
5. Solution in r_n

567

Recursion Tree



569

Algorithm RodCutMemoized(m, v, n)

Input: $n \geq 0$, Prices v , Memoization Table m

Output: best value

```
q ← 0
if n > 0 then
  if ∃ m[n] then
    q ← m[n]
  else
    for i ← 1, ..., n do
      q ← max{q, vi + RodCutMemoized(m, v, n - i)};
    m[n] ← q
return q
```

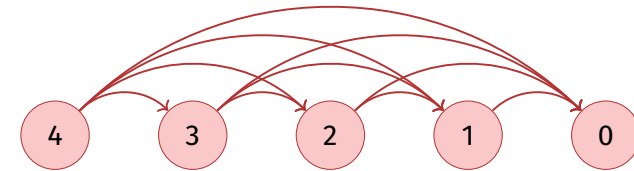
Running time $\sum_{i=1}^n i = \Theta(n^2)$

Construction of the Optimal Cut

- During the (recursive) computation of the optimal solution for each $k \leq n$ the recursive algorithm determines the optimal length of the first rod
- Store the length of the first rod in a separate table of length n

Subproblem-Graph

Describes the mutual dependencies of the subproblems



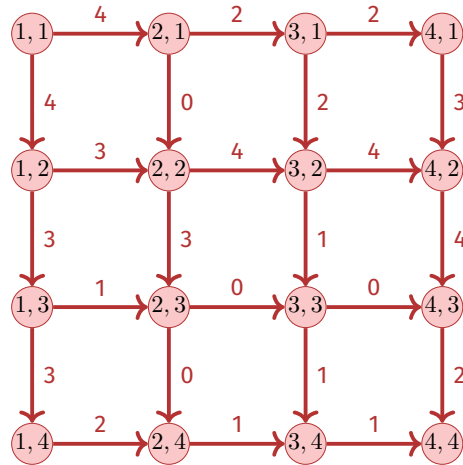
and must not contain cycles

Bottom-up Description with the example

1. Dimension of the table? Semantics of the entries?
 $n \times 1$ table. n th entry contains the best value of a rod of length n .
2. Which entries do not depend on other entries?
Value r_0 is 0
3. Computation order?
 $r_i, i = 1, \dots, n$.
4. Reconstruction of a solution?
 r_n is the best value for the rod of length n .

Rabbit!

A rabbit sits on cite $(1, 1)$ of an $n \times n$ grid. It can only move to east or south. On each pathway there is a number of carrots. How many carrots does the rabbit collect maximally?



574

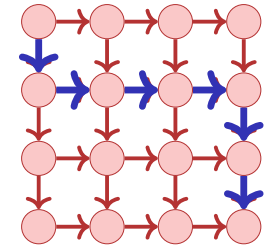
Rabbit!

Number of possible paths?

- Choice of $n - 1$ ways to south out of $2n - 2$ ways overall.

$$\binom{2n-2}{n-1} \in \Omega(2^n)$$

⇒ No chance for a naive algorithm



The path 100011
(1:to south, 0: to east)

575

Recursion

Wanted: $T_{1,1}$ = maximal number carrots from $(1, 1)$ to (n, n) .

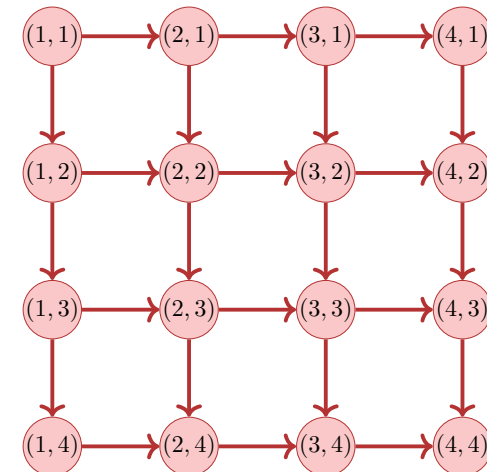
Let $w_{(i,j)-(i',j')}$ number of carrots on egde from (i, j) to (i', j') .

Recursion (maximal number of carrots from (i, j) to (n, n))

$$T_{ij} = \begin{cases} \max\{w_{(i,j)-(i,j+1)} + T_{i,j+1}, w_{(i,j)-(i+1,j)} + T_{i+1,j}\}, & i < n, j < n \\ w_{(i,j)-(i,j+1)} + T_{i,j+1}, & i = n, j < n \\ w_{(i,j)-(i+1,j)} + T_{i+1,j}, & i < n, j = n \\ 0 & i = j = n \end{cases}$$

576

Graph of Subproblem Dependencies



577

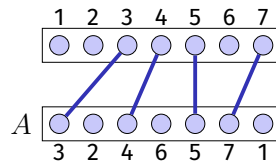
Bottom-up Description with the example

1. **Dimension of the table? Semantics of the entries?**
Table T with size $n \times n$. Entry at i, j provides the maximal number of carrots from (i, j) to (n, n) .
2. **Which entries do not depend on other entries?**
Value $T_{n,n}$ is 0
Computation order?
3. $T_{i,j}$ with $i = n \searrow 1$ and for each i : $j = n \searrow 1$, (or vice-versa: $j = n \searrow 1$ and for each j : $i = n \searrow 1$).
4. **Reconstruction of a solution?**
 $T_{1,1}$ provides the maximal number of carrots.

578

Formally

- Consider Sequence $A_n = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$.
- Search for a longest increasing subsequence of A_n .
- Examples of increasing subsequences: $(3, 4, 5)$, $(2, 4, 5, 7)$, $(3, 4, 5, 7)$, $(3, 7)$.



Generalization: allow any numbers, even with duplicates (still only strictly increasing subsequences permitted). Example: $(2, 3, 3, 3, 5, 1)$ with increasing subsequence $(2, 3, 5)$.

580

Longest Ascending Sequence (LAS)



Connect as many as possible fitting ports without lines crossing.

579

First idea

Let L_i = longest ascending subsequence of A_i ($1 \leq i \leq n$)

Assumption: LAS L_k of A_k known. Now want to compute L_{k+1} for A_{k+1} .

If a_{k+1} fits to L_k , then $L_{k+1} = L_k \oplus a_{k+1}$?

Counterexample $A_5 = (1, 2, 5, 3, 4)$. Let $A_3 = (1, 2, 5)$ with $L_3 = A_3$ and $L_4 = A_3$. Determine L_5 from L_4 ?

It does not work this way, we cannot infer L_{k+1} from L_k .

581

Second idea.

Let L_i = longest ascending subsequence of A_i ($1 \leq i \leq n$)

Assumption: a LAS L_j is known for each $j \leq k$. Now compute LAS L_{k+1} for $k+1$.

Look at all fitting $L_{k+1} = L_j \oplus a_{k+1}$ ($j \leq k$) and choose a longest sequence.

Counterexample: $A_5 = (1, 2, 5, 3, 4)$. Let $A_4 = (1, 2, 5, 3)$ with $L_1 = (1)$, $L_2 = (1, 2)$, $L_3 = (1, 2, 5)$, $L_4 = (1, 2, 5)$. Determine L_5 from L_1, \dots, L_4 ?

That does not work either: cannot infer L_{k+1} from only an arbitrary solution L_j . We need to consider all LAS. Too many.

582

Third approach Example

Example: $A = (1, 1000, 1001, 4, 5, 2, 6, 7)$

A	LAT $M_{k,\cdot}$
1	(1)
+ 1000	(1), (1, 1000)
+ 1001	(1), (1, 1000), (1, 1000, 1001)
+ 4	(1), (1, 4), (1, 1000, 1001)
+ 5	(1), (1, 4), (1, 4, 5)
+ 2	(1), (1, 2), (1, 4, 5)
+ 6	(1), (1, 2), (1, 4, 5), (1, 4, 5, 6)
+ 7	(1), (1, 2), (1, 4, 5), (1, 4, 5, 6), (1, 4, 5, 6, 7)

584

Third approach

Let $M_{n,i}$ = longest ascending subsequence of A_i ($1 \leq i \leq n$)

Assumption: the LAS M_j for A_k , that end with smallest element are known for each of the lengths $1 \leq j \leq k$.

Consider all fitting $M_{k,j} \oplus a_{k+1}$ ($j \leq k$) and update the table of the LAS, that end with smallest possible element.

583

DP Table

- Idea: save the last element of the increasing sequence $M_{k,j}$ at slot j .

- Example:
3 2 5 1 6 4

- Problem: Table does not contain the subsequence, only the last value.

- Solution: second table with the predecessors.

index	1	2	3	4	5	6
value	3	2	5	1	6	4
Predecessor	$-\infty$	$-\infty$	2	$-\infty$	5	1

Index	0	1	2	3	4	...
$(L_j)_j$	$-\infty$	1	4	6	∞	

585

Dynamic Programming Algorithm LAS

Table dimension? Semantics?

1. Two tables $T[0, \dots, n]$ and $V[1, \dots, n]$.
 $T[j]$: last Element of the increasing subsequence $M_{n,j}$
 $V[j]$: Value of the predecessor of a_j .
 Start with $T[0] \leftarrow -\infty, T[i] \leftarrow \infty \forall i > 1$

Computation of an entry

2. Entries in T sorted in ascending order. For each new entry a_k binary search for l , such that $T[l] < a_k < T[l+1]$. Set $T[l+1] \leftarrow a_k$. Set $V[k] = T[l]$.

586

Dynamic Programming algorithm LAS

Computation order

3. Traverse the list and compute $T[k]$ and $V[k]$ with ascending k

Reconstruction of a solution?

4. Search the largest l with $T[l] < \infty$. l is the last index of the LAS. Starting at l search for the index $i < l$ such that $V[l] = a_i$, i is the predecessor of l . Repeat with $l \leftarrow i$ until $T[l] = -\infty$

587

Analysis

■ Computation of the table:

- Initialization: $\Theta(n)$ Operations
- Computation of the k th entry: binary search on positions $\{1, \dots, k\}$ plus constant number of assignments.

$$\sum_{k=1}^n (\log k + \mathcal{O}(1)) = \mathcal{O}(n) + \sum_{k=1}^n \log(k) = \Theta(n \log n).$$

- **Reconstruction:** traverse A from right to left: $\mathcal{O}(n)$.

Overall runtime:

$$\Theta(n \log n).$$

588

Minimal Editing Distance

Editing distance of two sequences $A_n = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$, $B_m = (b_1, \dots, b_m)$.

Editing operations:

- **Insertion** of a character
- **Deletion** of a character
- **Replacement** of a character

Question: how many editing operations at least required in order to transform string A into string B .

TIGER ZIGER ZIEGER ZIEGE

589

Minimal Editing Distance

Wanted: cheapest character-wise transformation $A_n \rightarrow B_m$ with costs

operation	Levenshtein	LCS ³²	general
Insert c	1	1	$\text{ins}(c)$
Delete c	1	1	$\text{del}(c)$
Replace $c \rightarrow c'$	$\mathbb{1}(c \neq c')$	$\infty \cdot \mathbb{1}(c \neq c')$	$\text{repl}(c, c')$

Beispiel

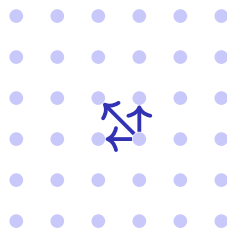
T	I	G	E	R	T	I	_	G	E	R	T→Z	+E	-R
Z	I	E	G	E	Z	I	E	G	E	_	Z→T	-E	+R

³²Longest common subsequence – A special case of an editing problem

590

DP

4. Dependencies



⇒ Computation from left top to bottom right. Row- or column-wise.

5. Solution in $E(n, m)$

DP

- $E(n, m)$ = minimum number edit operations (ED cost) $a_{1..n} \rightarrow b_{1..m}$
- Subproblems $E(i, j)$ = ED of $a_{1..i}, b_{1..j}$. #SP = $n \cdot m$
- Guess Costs $\Theta(1)$

- $a_{1..i} \rightarrow a_{1..i-1}$ (delete)
- $a_{1..i} \rightarrow a_{1..i}b_j$ (insert)
- $a_{1..i} \rightarrow a_{1..i-1}b_j$ (replace)

3. Rekursion

$$E(i, j) = \min \begin{cases} \text{del}(a_i) + E(i-1, j), \\ \text{ins}(b_j) + E(i, j-1), \\ \text{repl}(a_i, b_j) + E(i-1, j-1) \end{cases}$$

591

Example (Levenshtein Distance)

$$E[i, j] \leftarrow \min \{E[i-1, j] + 1, E[i, j-1] + 1, E[i-1, j-1] + \mathbb{1}(a_i \neq b_j)\}$$

	∅	Z	I	E	G	E
∅	0	1	2	3	4	5
T	1	1	2	3	4	5
I	2	2	1	2	3	4
G	3	3	2	2	1	2
E	4	4	3	2	2	1
R	5	5	4	3	3	2

Editing steps: from bottom right to top left, following the recursion.
Bottom-Up description of the algorithm: exercise

592

593

Bottom-Up DP algorithm ED

- | | |
|----|--|
| | Dimension of the table? Semantics? |
| 1. | Table $E[0, \dots, m][0, \dots, n]$. $E[i, j]$: minimal edit distance of the strings (a_1, \dots, a_i) and (b_1, \dots, b_j) |
| | Computation of an entry |
| 2. | $E[0, i] \leftarrow i \forall 0 \leq i \leq m$, $E[j, 0] \leftarrow j \forall 0 \leq j \leq n$. Computation of $E[i, j]$ otherwise via $E[i, j] = \min\{\text{del}(a_i) + E(i-1, j), \text{ins}(b_j) + E(i, j-1), \text{repl}(a_i, b_j) + E(i-1, j-1)\}$ |

594

Bottom-Up DP algorithm ED

- | | |
|----|---|
| 3. | Computation order |
| | Rows increasing and within columns increasing (or the other way round). |
| | Reconstruction of a solution? |
| 4. | Start with $j = m$, $i = n$. If $E[i, j] = \text{repl}(a_i, b_j) + E(i-1, j-1)$ then output $a_i \rightarrow b_j$ and continue with $(j, i) \leftarrow (j-1, i-1)$; otherwise, if $E[i, j] = \text{del}(a_i) + E(i-1, j)$ output $\text{del}(a_i)$ and continue with $j \leftarrow j-1$ otherwise, if $E[i, j] = \text{ins}(b_j) + E(i, j-1)$, continue with $i \leftarrow i-1$. Terminate for $i = 0$ and $j = 0$. |

595

Analysis ED

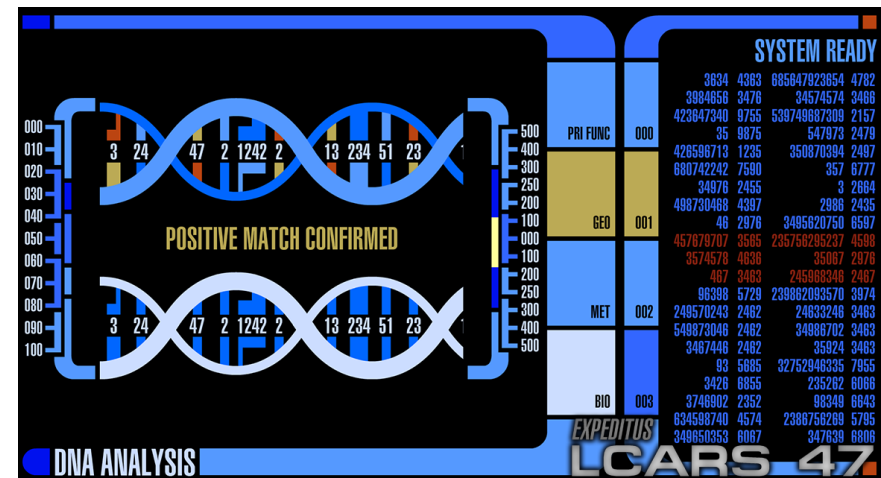
- Number table entries: $(m+1) \cdot (n+1)$.
- Constant number of assignments and comparisons each. Number steps: $\mathcal{O}(mn)$
- Determination of solution: decrease i or j . Maximally $\mathcal{O}(n+m)$ steps.

Runtime overall:

$$\mathcal{O}(mn).$$

596

DNA - Comparison (Star Trek)



597

DNA - Comparison

- DNA consists of sequences of four different nucleotides **A**denine **G**uanine **T**hymine **C**ytosine
- DNA sequences (genes) thus can be described with strings of A, G, T and C.
- Possible comparison of two genes: determine the **longest common subsequence**

The longest common subsequence problem is a special case of the minimal edit distance problem.

Longest common subsequence

Subsequences of a string:

Subsequences(KUH): (), (K), (U), (H), (KU), (KH), (UH), (KUH)

Problem:

- **Input:** two strings $A = (a_1, \dots, a_m)$, $B = (b_1, \dots, b_n)$ with lengths $m > 0$ and $n > 0$.
- **Wanted:** Longest common subsequences (LCS) of A and B .

598

599

Longest Common Subsequence

Examples:

$LGT(IGEL, KATZE) = E$, $LGT(TIGER, ZIEGE) = IGE$

Ideas to solve?

T I G E R
Z I G E

Recursive Procedure

Assumption: solutions $L(i, j)$ known for $A[1, \dots, i]$ and $B[1, \dots, j]$ for all $1 \leq i \leq m$ and $1 \leq j \leq n$, but not for $i = m$ and $j = n$.

T I G E R
Z I G E

Consider characters a_m, b_n . Three possibilities:

1. A is enlarged by one whitespace. $L(m, n) = L(m - 1, n)$
2. B is enlarged by one whitespace. $L(m, n) = L(m, n - 1)$
3. $L(m, n) = L(m - 1, n - 1) + \delta_{mn}$ with $\delta_{mn} = 1$ if $a_m = b_n$ and $\delta_{mn} = 0$ otherwise

600

601

Recursion

$$L(m, n) \leftarrow \max\{L(m-1, n-1) + \delta_{mn}, L(m, n-1), L(m-1, n)\}$$

for $m, n > 0$ and base cases $L(\cdot, 0) = 0, L(0, \cdot) = 0$.

	\emptyset	Z	I	E	G	E
\emptyset	0	0	0	0	0	0
T	0	0	0	0	0	0
I	0	0	1	1	1	1
G	0	0	1	1	2	2
E	0	0	1	2	2	3
R	0	0	1	2	2	3

602

Dynamic Programming algorithm LCS

Dimension of the table? Semantics?

1. Table $L[0, \dots, m][0, \dots, n]$. $L[i, j]$: length of a LCS of the strings (a_1, \dots, a_i) and (b_1, \dots, b_j)

Computation of an entry

2. $L[0, i] \leftarrow 0 \forall 0 \leq i \leq m, L[j, 0] \leftarrow 0 \forall 0 \leq j \leq n$. Computation of $L[i, j]$ otherwise via $L[i, j] = \max(L[i-1, j-1] + \delta_{ij}, L[i, j-1], L[i-1, j])$.

603

Dynamic Programming algorithm LCS

Computation order

3. Rows increasing and within columns increasing (or the other way round).

Reconstruction of a solution?

4. Start with $j = m, i = n$. If $a_i = b_j$ then output a_i and continue with $(j, i) \leftarrow (j-1, i-1)$; otherwise, if $L[i, j] = L[i, j-1]$ continue with $j \leftarrow j-1$ otherwise, if $L[i, j] = L[i-1, j]$ continue with $i \leftarrow i-1$. Terminate for $i = 0$ or $j = 0$.

604

Analysis LCS

- Number table entries: $(m+1) \cdot (n+1)$.
- Constant number of assignments and comparisons each. Number steps: $\mathcal{O}(mn)$
- Determination of solution: decrease i or j . Maximally $\mathcal{O}(n+m)$ steps.

Runtime overall:

$$\mathcal{O}(mn).$$

605

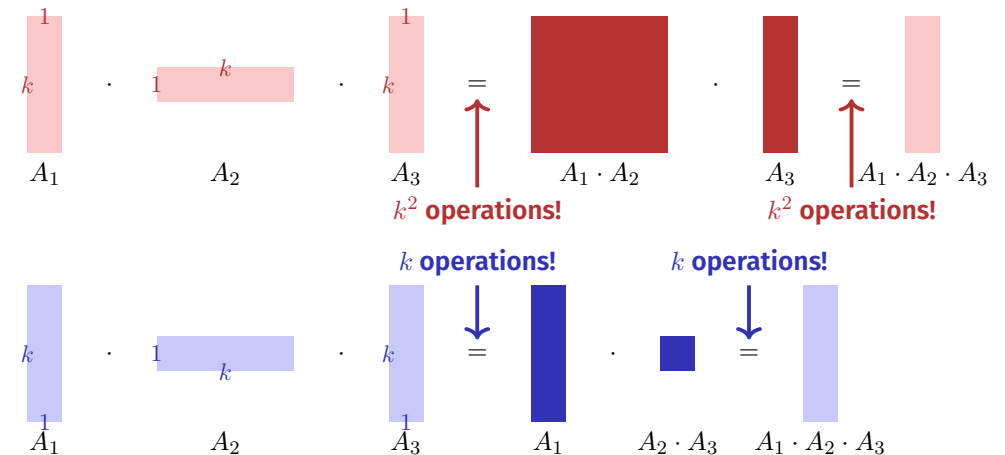
Matrix-Chain-Multiplication

Task: Computation of the product $A_1 \cdot A_2 \cdot \dots \cdot A_n$ of matrices A_1, \dots, A_n .
Matrix multiplication is associative, i.e. the order of evaluation can be chosen arbitrarily

Goal: efficient computation of the product.

Assumption: multiplication of an $(r \times s)$ -matrix with an $(s \times u)$ -matrix provides costs $r \cdot s \cdot u$.

Does it matter?



606

607

Recursion

■ Assume that the best possible computation of $(A_1 \cdot A_2 \cdots A_i)$ and $(A_{i+1} \cdot A_{i+2} \cdots A_n)$ is known for each i .

■ Compute best i , done.

$n \times n$ -table M . entry $M[p, q]$ provides costs of the best possible bracketing $(A_p \cdot A_{p+1} \cdots A_q)$.

$$M[p, q] \leftarrow \min_{p \leq i < q} (M[p, i] + M[i + 1, q] + \text{costs of the last multiplication})$$

Computation of the DP-table

■ Base cases $M[p, p] \leftarrow 0$ for all $1 \leq p \leq n$.

■ Computation of $M[p, q]$ depends on $M[i, j]$ with $p \leq i \leq j \leq q$, $(i, j) \neq (p, q)$.

In particular $M[p, q]$ depends at most from entries $M[i, j]$ with $i - j < q - p$.

Consequence: fill the table from the diagonal.

608

609

Analysis

DP-table has n^2 entries. Computation of an entry requires considering up to $n - 1$ other entries.
Overall runtime $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$.

Readout the order from M : exercise!

Digression: matrix multiplication

Consider the multiplication of two $n \times n$ matrices.

Let

$$A = (a_{ij})_{1 \leq i, j \leq n}, B = (b_{ij})_{1 \leq i, j \leq n}, C = (c_{ij})_{1 \leq i, j \leq n}, \\ C = A \cdot B$$

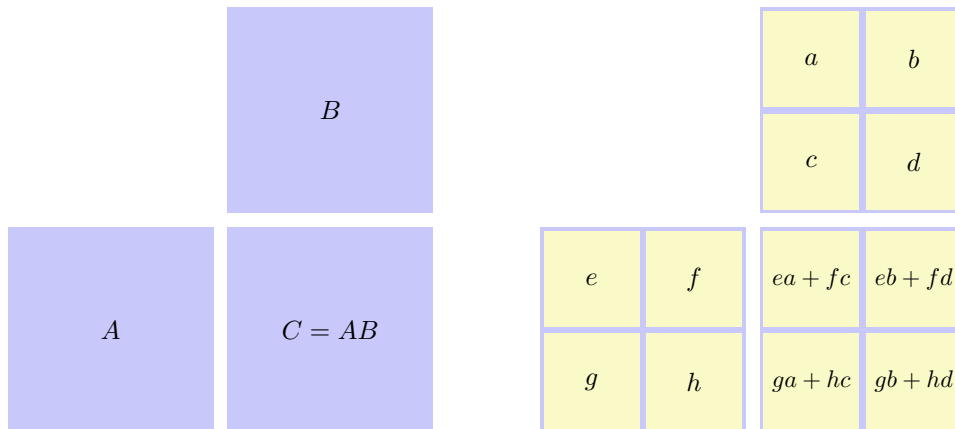
then

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik} b_{kj}.$$

Naive algorithm requires $\Theta(n^3)$ elementary multiplications.

610

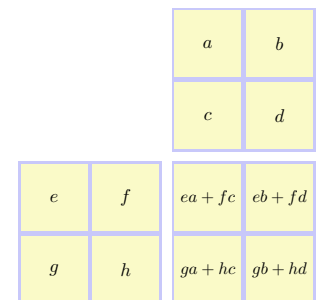
Divide and Conquer



612

Divide and Conquer

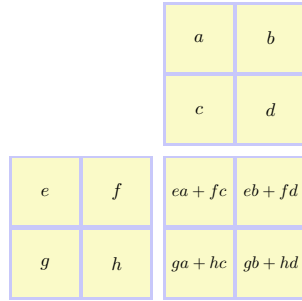
- Assumption $n = 2^k$.
- Number of elementary multiplications:
 $M(n) = 8M(n/2)$, $M(1) = 1$.
- yields $M(n) = 8^{\log_2 n} = n^{\log_2 8} = n^3$. No advantage 😞



613

Strassen's Matrix Multiplication

- **Nontrivial observation by Strassen (1969):** It suffices to compute the seven products
 $A = (e + h) \cdot (a + d)$, $B = (g + h) \cdot a$, $C = e \cdot (b - d)$,
 $D = h \cdot (c - a)$, $E = (e + f) \cdot d$, $F = (g - e) \cdot (a + b)$,
 $G = (f - h) \cdot (c + d)$. **Because:**
 $ea + fc = A + D - E + G$, $eb + fd = C + E$,
 $ga + hc = B + D$, $gb + hd = A - B + C + F$.
- This yields $M'(n) = 7M(n/2)$, $M'(1) = 1$.
Thus $M'(n) = 7^{\log_2 n} = n^{\log_2 7} \approx n^{2.807}$.
- Fastest currently known algorithm: $\mathcal{O}(n^{2.37})$



614

21. Dynamic Programming II

Subset sum problem, knapsack problem, greedy algorithm vs dynamic programming [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 7.2, 7.3, 5.7, Cormen et al, Kap. 15,35.5]

615

Task



Partition the set of the "item" above into two set such that both sets have the same value.

A solution:



616

Subset Sum Problem

Consider $n \in \mathbb{N}$ numbers $a_1, \dots, a_n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Goal: decide if a selection $I \subseteq \{1, \dots, n\}$ exists such that

$$\sum_{i \in I} a_i = \sum_{i \in \{1, \dots, n\} \setminus I} a_i.$$

617

Naive Algorithm

Check for each bit vector $b = (b_1, \dots, b_n) \in \{0, 1\}^n$, if

$$\sum_{i=1}^n b_i a_i \stackrel{?}{=} \sum_{i=1}^n (1 - b_i) a_i$$

Worst case: n steps for each of the 2^n bit vectors b . Number of steps: $\mathcal{O}(n \cdot 2^n)$.

Example

Set $\{1, 6, 2, 3, 4\}$ with value sum 16 has 32 subsets.

Partitioning into $\{1, 6\}$, $\{2, 3, 4\}$ yields the following 12 subsets with value sums:

{1, 6}				{2, 3, 4}							
{}	{1}	{6}	{1, 6}	{}	{2}	{3}	{4}	{2, 3}	{2, 4}	{3, 4}	{2, 3, 4}
0	1	6	7	0	2	3	4	5	6	7	9

\Leftrightarrow One possible solution: $\{1, 3, 4\}$

Algorithm with Partition

- Partition the input into two equally sized parts $a_1, \dots, a_{n/2}$ and $a_{n/2+1}, \dots, a_n$.
- Iterate over all subsets of the two parts and compute partial sum $S_1^k, \dots, S_{2^{n/2}}^k$ ($k = 1, 2$).
- Sort the partial sums: $S_1^k \leq S_2^k \leq \dots \leq S_{2^{n/2}}^k$.
- Check if there are partial sums such that $S_i^1 + S_j^2 = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^n a_i =: h$
 - Start with $i = 1, j = 2^{n/2}$.
 - If $S_i^1 + S_j^2 = h$ then finished
 - If $S_i^1 + S_j^2 > h$ then $j \leftarrow j - 1$
 - If $S_i^1 + S_j^2 < h$ then $i \leftarrow i + 1$

Analysis

- Generate partial sums for each part: $\mathcal{O}(2^{n/2} \cdot n)$.
- Each sorting: $\mathcal{O}(2^{n/2} \log(2^{n/2})) = \mathcal{O}(n 2^{n/2})$.
- Merge: $\mathcal{O}(2^{n/2})$

Overall running time

$$\mathcal{O}(n \cdot 2^{n/2}) = \mathcal{O}(n(\sqrt{2})^n).$$

Substantial improvement over the naive method – but still exponential!

Dynamic programming

Task: let $z = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^n a_i$. Find a selection $I \subset \{1, \dots, n\}$, such that $\sum_{i \in I} a_i = z$.

DP-table: $[0, \dots, n] \times [0, \dots, z]$ -table T with boolean entries. $T[k, s]$ specifies if there is a selection $I_k \subset \{1, \dots, k\}$ such that $\sum_{i \in I_k} a_i = s$.

Initialization: $T[0, 0] = \text{true}$. $T[0, s] = \text{false}$ for $s > 0$.

Computation:

$$T[k, s] \leftarrow \begin{cases} T[k-1, s] & \text{if } s < a_k \\ T[k-1, s] \vee T[k-1, s-a_k] & \text{if } s \geq a_k \end{cases}$$

for increasing k and then within k increasing s .

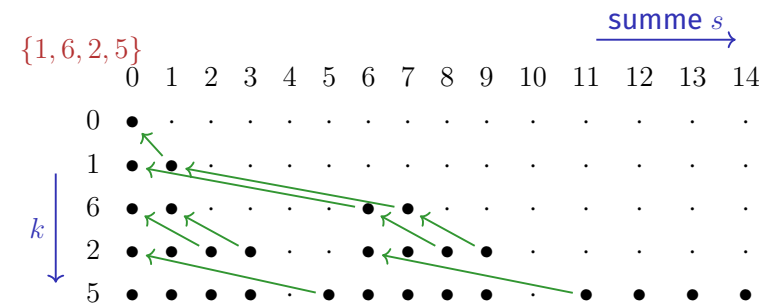
622

That is mysterious

The algorithm requires a number of $\mathcal{O}(n \cdot z)$ fundamental operations.

What is going on now? Does the algorithm suddenly have polynomial running time?

Example



Determination of the solution: if $T[k, s] = T[k-1, s]$ then a_k unused and continue with $T[k-1, s]$, otherwise a_k used and continue with $T[k-1, s-a_k]$.

623

Explained

The algorithm does not necessarily provide a polynomial run time. z is an number and not a quantity!

Input length of the algorithm \cong number bits to *reasonably* represent the data. With the number z this would be $\zeta = \log z$.

Consequently the algorithm requires $\mathcal{O}(n \cdot 2^\zeta)$ fundamental operations and has a run time exponential in ζ .

If, however, z is polynomial in n then the algorithm has polynomial run time in n . This is called pseudo-polynomial.

624

625

NP

It is known that the subset-sum algorithm belongs to the class of NP-complete problems (and is thus *NP-hard*).

P: Set of all problems that can be solved in polynomial time.

NP: Set of all problems that can be solved **N**ondeterministically in **P**olynomial time.

Implications:

- NP contains P.
- Problems can be verified in polynomial time.
- Under the not (yet?) proven assumption³³ that $NP \neq P$, there is no algorithm with polynomial run time for the problem considered above.

³³The most important unsolved question of theoretical computer science.

626

Knapsack problem

Given:

- set of $n \in \mathbb{N}$ items $\{1, \dots, n\}$.
- Each item i has value $v_i \in \mathbb{N}$ and weight $w_i \in \mathbb{N}$.
- Maximum weight $W \in \mathbb{N}$.
- Input is denoted as $E = (v_i, w_i)_{i=1, \dots, n}$.

Wanted:

a selection $I \subseteq \{1, \dots, n\}$ that maximises $\sum_{i \in I} v_i$ under $\sum_{i \in I} w_i \leq W$.

628

The knapsack problem

We pack our suitcase with ...

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| ■ toothbrush | ■ Toothbrush | ■ toothbrush |
| ■ dumbell set | ■ Air balloon | ■ coffe machine |
| ■ coffee machine | ■ Pocket knife | ■ pocket knife |
| ■ uh oh – too heavy. | ■ identity card | ■ identity card |
| | ■ dumbell set | ■ Uh oh – too heavy. |
| | ■ Uh oh – too heavy. | |

Aim to take as much as possible with us. But some things are more valuable than others!

627

Greedy heuristics

Sort the items decreasingly by value per weight v_i/w_i : Permutation p with $v_{p_i}/w_{p_i} \geq v_{p_{i+1}}/w_{p_{i+1}}$
Add items in this order ($I \leftarrow I \cup \{p_i\}$), if the maximum weight is not exceeded.

That is fast: $\Theta(n \log n)$ for sorting and $\Theta(n)$ for the selection. But is it good?

629

Counterexample

$$\begin{aligned} v_1 &= 1 & w_1 &= 1 & v_1/w_1 &= 1 \\ v_2 &= W - 1 & w_2 &= W & v_2/w_2 &= \frac{W-1}{W} \end{aligned}$$

Greedy algorithm chooses $\{v_1\}$ with value 1.

Best selection: $\{v_2\}$ with value $W - 1$ and weight W .

Greedy heuristics can be arbitrarily bad.

Dynamic Programming

Partition the maximum weight.

Three dimensional table $m[i, w, v]$ ("doable") of boolean values.

$m[i, w, v] = \text{true}$ if and only if

- A selection of the first i parts exists ($0 \leq i \leq n$)
- with overall weight w ($0 \leq w \leq W$) and
- a value of at least v ($0 \leq v \leq \sum_{i=1}^n v_i$).

630

631

Computation of the DP table

Initially

- $m[i, w, 0] \leftarrow \text{true}$ für alle $i \geq 0$ und alle $w \geq 0$.
- $m[0, w, v] \leftarrow \text{false}$ für alle $w \geq 0$ und alle $v > 0$.

Computation

$$m[i, w, v] \leftarrow \begin{cases} m[i-1, w, v] \vee m[i-1, w-w_i, v-v_i] & \text{if } w \geq w_i \text{ und } v \geq v_i \\ m[i-1, w, v] & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

increasing in i and for each i increasing in w and for fixed i and w increasing by v .

Solution: largest v , such that $m[i, w, v] = \text{true}$ for some i and w .

632

Observation

The definition of the problem obviously implies that

- for $m[i, w, v] = \text{true}$ it holds:
 $m[i', w, v] = \text{true} \forall i' \geq i$,
 $m[i, w', v] = \text{true} \forall w' \geq w$,
 $m[i, w, v'] = \text{true} \forall v' \leq v$.
- fpr $m[i, w, v] = \text{false}$ it holds:
 $m[i', w, v] = \text{false} \forall i' \leq i$,
 $m[i, w', v] = \text{false} \forall w' \leq w$,
 $m[i, w, v'] = \text{false} \forall v' \geq v$.

This strongly suggests that we do not need a 3d table!

633

2d DP table

Table entry $t[i, w]$ contains, instead of boolean values, the largest v , that can be achieved³⁴ with

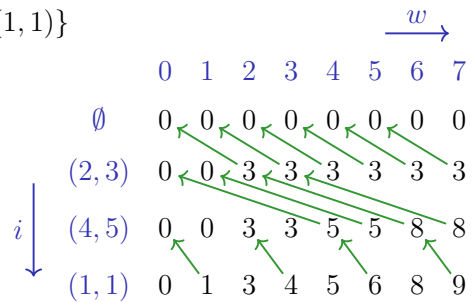
- items $1, \dots, i$ ($0 \leq i \leq n$)
- at maximum weight w ($0 \leq w \leq W$).

³⁴We could have followed a similar idea in order to reduce the size of the sparse table for subset sum.

634

Example

$E = \{(2, 3), (4, 5), (1, 1)\}$



Reading out the solution: if $t[i, w] = t[i - 1, w]$ then item i unused and continue with $t[i - 1, w]$ otherwise used and continue with $t[i - 1, s - w_i]$.

636

Computation

Initially

- $t[0, w] \leftarrow 0$ for all $w \geq 0$.

We compute

$$t[i, w] \leftarrow \begin{cases} t[i - 1, w] & \text{if } w < w_i \\ \max\{t[i - 1, w], t[i - 1, w - w_i] + v_i\} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

increasing by i and for fixed i increasing by w .
Solution is located in $t[n, w]$

635

Analysis

The two algorithms for the knapsack problem provide a run time in $\Theta(n \cdot W \cdot \sum_{i=1}^n v_i)$ (3d-table) and $\Theta(n \cdot W)$ (2d-table) and are thus both pseudo-polynomial, but they deliver the best possible result. The greedy algorithm is very fast but can yield an arbitrarily bad result. Now we consider a solution between the two extremes.

637

22. Dynamic Programming III

FPTAS [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 7.2, 7.3, Cormen et al, Kap. 15,35.5], Optimal Search Tree [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 5.7]

Different formulation of the algorithm

Before: weight limit $w \rightarrow$ maximal value v

Reversed: value $v \rightarrow$ minimal weight w

\Rightarrow **alternative table** $g[i, v]$ provides the minimum weight with

- a selection of the first i items ($0 \leq i \leq n$) that
- provide a value of exactly v ($0 \leq v \leq \sum_{i=1}^n v_i$).

Approximation

Let $\varepsilon \in (0, 1)$ given. Let I_{opt} an optimal selection.

Now try to find a valid selection I with

$$\sum_{i \in I} v_i \geq (1 - \varepsilon) \sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} v_i.$$

Sum of weights may not violate the weight limit.

Computation

Initially

- $g[0, 0] \leftarrow 0$
- $g[0, v] \leftarrow \infty$ (Value v cannot be achieved with 0 items.).

Computation

$$g[i, v] \leftarrow \begin{cases} g[i-1, v] & \text{if } v < v_i \\ \min\{g[i-1, v], g[i-1, v-v_i] + w_i\} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

incrementally in i and for fixed i increasing in v .

Solution can be found at largest index v with $g[n, v] \leq w$.

Example

$$E = \{(2, 3), (4, 5), (1, 1)\}$$

		\xrightarrow{v}									
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	\emptyset	0	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞
	(2, 3)	0	∞	∞	2	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞
$\downarrow i$	(4, 5)	0	∞	∞	2	∞	4	∞	∞	6	∞
	(1, 1)	0	1	∞	2	3	4	5	∞	6	7

Read out the solution: if $g[i, v] = g[i - 1, v]$ then item i unused and continue with $g[i - 1, v]$ otherwise used and continue with $g[i - 1, v - v_i]$.

642

The approximation trick

Pseudopolynomial run time gets polynomial if the number of occurring values can be bounded by a polynomial of the input length.

Let $K > 0$ be chosen *appropriately*. Replace values v_i by “rounded values” $\tilde{v}_i = \lfloor v_i / K \rfloor$ delivering a new input $E' = (w_i, \tilde{v}_i)_{i=1 \dots n}$.

Apply the algorithm on the input E' with the same weight limit W .

643

Idea

Example $K = 5$

Values

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, \dots , 98, 99, 100

\rightarrow

0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, \dots , 19, 19, 20

Obviously less different values

644

Properties of the new algorithm

- Selection of items in E' is also admissible in E . Weight remains unchanged!
- Run time of the algorithm is bounded by $\mathcal{O}(n^2 \cdot v_{\max} / K)$
($v_{\max} := \max\{v_i | 1 \leq i \leq n\}$)

645

How good is the approximation?

It holds that

$$v_i - K \leq K \cdot \left\lfloor \frac{v_i}{K} \right\rfloor = K \cdot \tilde{v}_i \leq v_i$$

Let I'_{opt} be an optimal solution of E' . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} v_i \right) - n \cdot K &\stackrel{|I_{\text{opt}}| \leq n}{\leq} \sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} (v_i - K) \leq \sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} (K \cdot \tilde{v}_i) = K \sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} \tilde{v}_i \\ &\stackrel{I'_{\text{opt}} \text{ optimal}}{\leq} K \sum_{i \in I'_{\text{opt}}} \tilde{v}_i = \sum_{i \in I'_{\text{opt}}} K \cdot \tilde{v}_i \leq \sum_{i \in I'_{\text{opt}}} v_i. \end{aligned}$$

646

Choice of K

Choose $K = \varepsilon \frac{\sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} v_i}{n}$. The optimal sum is unknown. Therefore we choose $K' = \varepsilon \frac{v_{\max}}{n}$.³⁵

It holds that $v_{\max} \leq \sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} v_i$ and thus $K' \leq K$ and the approximation is even slightly better.

The run time of the algorithm is bounded by

$$\mathcal{O}(n^2 \cdot v_{\max}/K') = \mathcal{O}(n^2 \cdot v_{\max}/(\varepsilon \cdot v_{\max}/n)) = \mathcal{O}(n^3/\varepsilon).$$

³⁵We can assume that items i with $w_i > W$ have been removed in the first place.

648

Choice of K

Requirement:

$$\sum_{i \in I'} v_i \geq (1 - \varepsilon) \sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} v_i.$$

Inequality from above:

$$\sum_{i \in I'_{\text{opt}}} v_i \geq \left(\sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} v_i \right) - n \cdot K$$

$$\text{thus: } K = \varepsilon \frac{\sum_{i \in I_{\text{opt}}} v_i}{n}.$$

647

FPTAS

Such a family of algorithms is called an approximation scheme: the choice of ε controls both running time and approximation quality.

The runtime $\mathcal{O}(n^3/\varepsilon)$ is a polynomial in n and in $\frac{1}{\varepsilon}$. The scheme is therefore also called a FPTAS - Fully Polynomial Time Approximation Scheme

649

22.2 Optimal Search Trees

Optimal binary Search Trees

Given: search probabilities p_i for each key k_i ($i = 1, \dots, n$) and q_i of each interval d_i ($i = 0, \dots, n$) between search keys of a binary search tree.

$$\sum_{i=1}^n p_i + \sum_{i=0}^n q_i = 1.$$

Wanted: optimal search tree T with key depths $\text{depth}(\cdot)$, that minimizes the expected search costs

$$\begin{aligned} C(T) &= \sum_{i=1}^n p_i \cdot (\text{depth}(k_i) + 1) + \sum_{i=0}^n q_i \cdot (\text{depth}(d_i) + 1) \\ &= 1 + \sum_{i=1}^n p_i \cdot \text{depth}(k_i) + \sum_{i=0}^n q_i \cdot \text{depth}(d_i) \end{aligned}$$

650

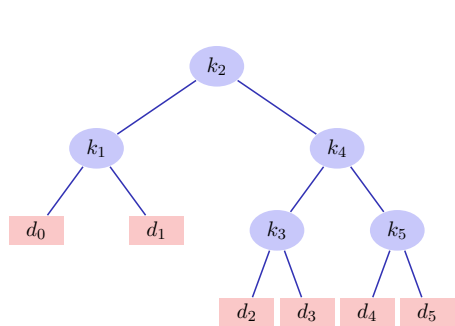
651

Example

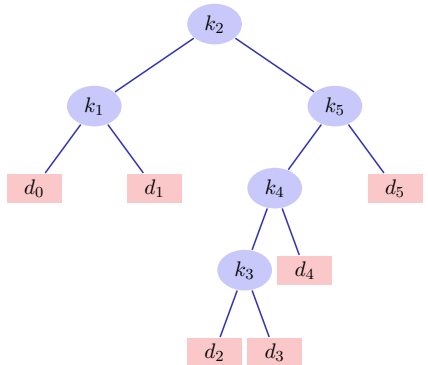
Expected Frequencies

i	0	1	2	3	4	5
p_i		0.15	0.10	0.05	0.10	0.20
q_i	0.05	0.10	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.10

Example



Search tree with expected costs
2.8



Search tree with expected costs
2.75

652

653

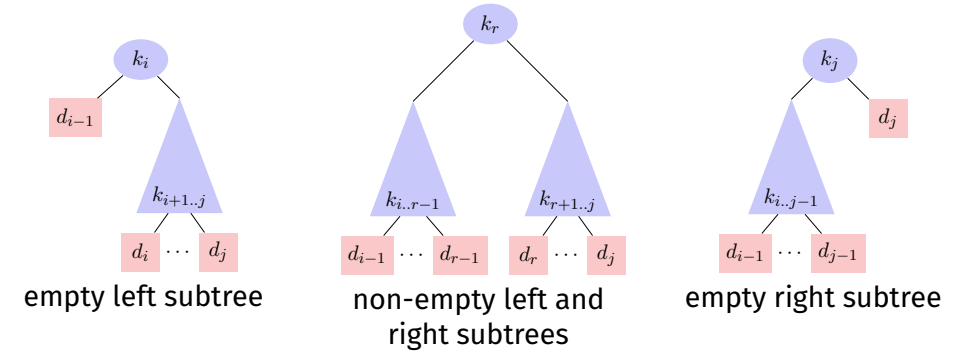
Structure of a optimal binary search tree

- Subtree with keys k_i, \dots, k_j and intervals d_{i-1}, \dots, d_j must be optimal for the respective sub-problem.³⁶
- Consider all subtrees with roots k_r and optimal subtrees for keys k_i, \dots, k_{r-1} and k_{r+1}, \dots, k_j

³⁶The usual argument: if it was not optimal, it could be replaced by a better solution improving the overall solution.

654

Sub-trees for Searching



655

Expected Search Costs

Let $\text{depth}_T(k)$ be the depth of a node k in the sub-tree T . Let k be the root of subtrees T_r and T_{L_r} and T_{R_r} be the left and right sub-tree of T_r . Then

$$\text{depth}_T(k_i) = \text{depth}_{T_{L_r}}(k_i) + 1, \quad (i < r)$$

$$\text{depth}_T(k_i) = \text{depth}_{T_{R_r}}(k_i) + 1, \quad (i > r)$$

Expected Search Costs

Let $e[i, j]$ be the costs of an optimal search tree with nodes k_i, \dots, k_j .

Base case $e[i, i-1]$, expected costs d_{i-1}

Let $w(i, j) = \sum_{l=i}^j p_l + \sum_{l=i-1}^j q_l$.

If k_r is the root of an optimal search tree with keys k_i, \dots, k_j , then

$$e[i, j] = p_r + (e[i, r-1] + w(i, r-1)) + (e[r+1, j] + w(r+1, j))$$

with $w(i, j) = w(i, r-1) + p_r + w(r+1, j)$:

$$e[i, j] = e[i, r-1] + e[r+1, j] + w(i, j).$$

656

657

Dynamic Programming

$$e[i, j] = \begin{cases} q_{i-1} & \text{if } j = i - 1, \\ \min_{i \leq r \leq j} \{e[i, r-1] + e[r+1, j] + w[i, j]\} & \text{if } i \leq j \end{cases}$$

Example

i	0	1	2	3	4	5
p_i		0.15	0.10	0.05	0.10	0.20
q_i	0.05	0.10	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.10

e

j	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	0.05					
1	0.45	0.10				
2	0.90	0.40	0.05			
3	1.25	0.70	0.25	0.05		
4	1.75	1.20	0.60	0.30	0.05	
5	2.75	2.00	1.30	0.90	0.50	0.10
	1	2	3	4	5	6

w

j	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	0.05					
1	0.30	0.10				
2	0.45	0.25	0.05			
3	0.55	0.35	0.15	0.05		
4	0.70	0.50	0.30	0.20	0.05	
5	1.00	0.80	0.60	0.50	0.35	0.10
	1	2	3	4	5	6

r

j	0	1	2	3	4	5
0						
1	1					
2	1	2				
3	2	2	3			
4	2	2	4	4		
5	2	4	5	5	5	
	1	2	3	4	5	6

Computation

Tables $e[1 \dots n+1, 0 \dots n]$, $w[1 \dots n+1, 0 \dots m]$, $r[1 \dots n, 1 \dots n]$ Initially

■ $e[i, i-1] \leftarrow q_{i-1}$, $w[i, i-1] \leftarrow q_{i-1}$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n+1$.

We compute

$$w[i, j] = w[i, j-1] + p_j + q_j$$

$$e[i, j] = \min_{i \leq r \leq j} \{e[i, r-1] + e[r+1, j] + w[i, j]\}$$

$$r[i, j] = \arg \min_{i \leq r \leq j} \{e[i, r-1] + e[r+1, j] + w[i, j]\}$$

for intervals $[i, j]$ with increasing lengths $l = 1, \dots, n$, each for $i = 1, \dots, n-l+1$. Result in $e[1, n]$, reconstruction via r . Runtime $\Theta(n^3)$.

23. Greedy Algorithms

Fractional Knapsack Problem, Huffman Coding [Cormen et al, Kap. 16.1, 16.3]

Greedy Choice

A problem with a recursive solution can be solved with a **greedy algorithm** if it has the following properties:

- The problem has **optimal substructure**: the solution of a problem can be constructed with a combination of solutions of sub-problems.
- The problem has the **greedy choice property**: The solution to a problem can be constructed, by using a local criterion that is not depending on the solution of the sub-problems.

Examples: fractional knapsack, Huffman-Coding (below)

Counter-Example: knapsack problem, Optimal Binary Search Tree

662

Greedy heuristics

Sort the items decreasingly by value per weight v_i/w_i .

Assumption $v_i/w_i \geq v_{i+1}/w_{i+1}$

Let $j = \max\{0 \leq k \leq n : \sum_{i=1}^k w_i \leq W\}$. Set

■ $q_i = 1$ for all $1 \leq i \leq j$.

■ $q_{j+1} = \frac{W - \sum_{i=1}^j w_i}{w_{j+1}}$.

■ $q_i = 0$ for all $i > j + 1$.

That is fast: $\Theta(n \log n)$ for sorting and $\Theta(n)$ for the computation of the q_i .

664

The Fractional Knapsack Problem

set of $n \in \mathbb{N}$ items $\{1, \dots, n\}$ Each item i has value $v_i \in \mathbb{N}$ and weight $w_i \in \mathbb{N}$. The maximum weight is given as $W \in \mathbb{N}$. Input is denoted as $E = (v_i, w_i)_{i=1, \dots, n}$.

Wanted: Fractions $0 \leq q_i \leq 1$ ($1 \leq i \leq n$) that maximise the sum $\sum_{i=1}^n q_i \cdot v_i$ under $\sum_{i=1}^n q_i \cdot w_i \leq W$.

663

Correctness

Assumption: optimal solution (r_i) ($1 \leq i \leq n$).

The knapsack is full: $\sum_i r_i \cdot w_i = \sum_i q_i \cdot w_i = W$.

Consider k : smallest i with $r_i \neq q_i$ Definition of greedy: $q_k > r_k$. Let $x = q_k - r_k > 0$.

Construct a new solution (r'_i) : $r'_i = r_i \forall i < k$. $r'_k = q_k$. Remove weight $\sum_{i=k+1}^n \delta_i = x \cdot w_k$ from items $k+1$ to n . This works because $\sum_{i=k}^n r_i \cdot w_i = \sum_{i=k}^n q_i \cdot w_i$.

665

Correctness

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{i=k}^n r'_i v_i &= r_k v_k + x w_k \frac{v_k}{w_k} + \sum_{i=k+1}^n (r_i w_i - \delta_i) \frac{v_i}{w_i} \\
 &\geq r_k v_k + x w_k \frac{v_k}{w_k} + \sum_{i=k+1}^n r_i w_i \frac{v_i}{w_i} - \delta_i \frac{v_k}{w_k} \\
 &= r_k v_k + x w_k \frac{v_k}{w_k} - x w_k \frac{v_k}{w_k} + \sum_{i=k+1}^n r_i w_i \frac{v_i}{w_i} = \sum_{i=k}^n r_i v_i.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus (r'_i) is also optimal. Iterative application of this idea generates the solution (q_i) .

666

Huffman-Codes

Goal: memory-efficient saving of a sequence of characters using a binary code with code words..

Example

File consisting of 100.000 characters from the alphabet $\{a, \dots, f\}$.

	a	b	c	d	e	f
Frequency (Thousands)	45	13	12	16	9	5
Code word with fix length	000	001	010	011	100	101
Code word variable length	0	101	100	111	1101	1100

File size (code with fix length): 300.000 bits.

File size (code with variable length): 224.000 bits.

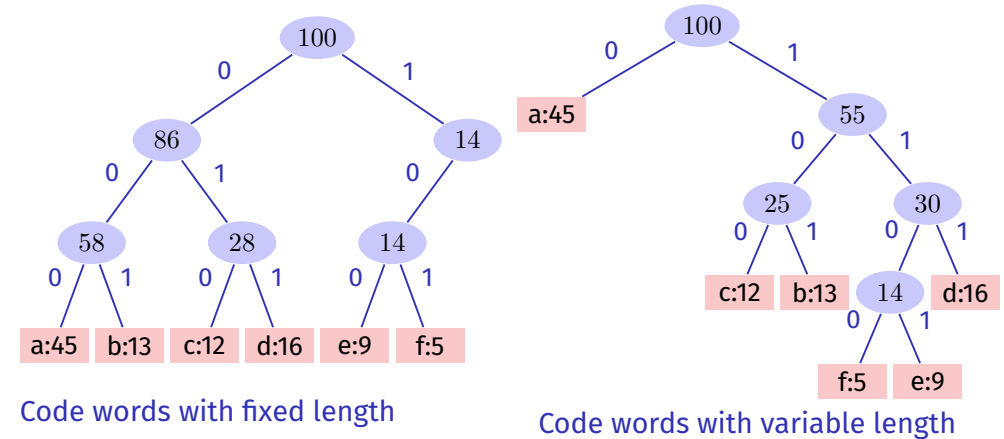
667

Huffman-Codes

- Consider prefix-codes: no code word can start with a different codeword.
- Prefix codes can, compared with other codes, achieve the optimal data compression (without proof here).
- Encoding: concatenation of the code words without stop character (difference to morseing).
 $af fe \rightarrow 0 \cdot 1100 \cdot 1100 \cdot 1101 \rightarrow 0110011001101$
- Decoding simple because prefixcode
 $0110011001101 \rightarrow 0 \cdot 1100 \cdot 1100 \cdot 1101 \rightarrow af fe$

668

Code trees



Code words with fixed length

Code words with variable length

669

Properties of the Code Trees

- An optimal coding of a file is always represented by a complete binary tree: every inner node has two children.
- Let C be the set of all code words, $f(c)$ the frequency of a codeword c and $d_T(c)$ the depth of a code word in tree T . Define the **cost** of a tree as

$$B(T) = \sum_{c \in C} f(c) \cdot d_T(c).$$

(cost = number bits of the encoded file)

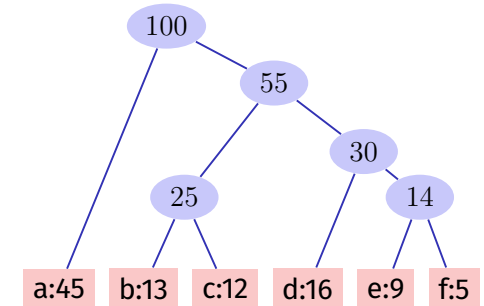
In the following a code tree is called optimal when it minimizes the costs.

670

Algorithm Idea

Tree construction bottom up

- Start with the set C of code words
- Replace iteratively the two nodes with smallest frequency by a new parent node.



671

Algorithm Huffman(C)

Input: code words $c \in C$

Output: Root of an optimal code tree

$n \leftarrow |C|$

$Q \leftarrow C$

for $i = 1$ **to** $n - 1$ **do**

 allocate a new node z

$z.\text{left} \leftarrow \text{ExtractMin}(Q)$

 // extract word with minimal frequency.

$z.\text{right} \leftarrow \text{ExtractMin}(Q)$

$z.\text{freq} \leftarrow z.\text{left}.\text{freq} + z.\text{right}.\text{freq}$

$\text{Insert}(Q, z)$

return $\text{ExtractMin}(Q)$

672

Analyse

Use a heap: build Heap in $\mathcal{O}(n)$. Extract-Min in $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$ for n Elements.
Yields a runtime of $\mathcal{O}(n \log n)$.

673

The greedy approach is correct

Theorem 19

Let x, y be two symbols with smallest frequencies in C and let $T'(C')$ be an optimal code tree to the alphabet $C' = C - \{x, y\} + \{z\}$ with a new symbol z with $f(z) = f(x) + f(y)$. Then the tree $T(C)$ that is constructed from $T'(C')$ by replacing the node z by an inner node with children x and y is an optimal code tree for the alphabet C .

Proof

It holds that

$$f(x) \cdot d_T(x) + f(y) \cdot d_T(y) = (f(x) + f(y)) \cdot (d_{T'}(z) + 1) = f(z) \cdot d_{T'}(z) + f(x) + f(y).$$

Thus $B(T') = B(T) - f(x) - f(y)$.

Assumption: T is not optimal. Then there is an optimal tree T'' with $B(T'') < B(T)$. We assume that x and y are brothers in T'' . Let T''' be the tree where the inner node with children x and y is replaced by z . Then it holds that $B(T''') = B(T'') - f(x) - f(y) < B(T) - f(x) - f(y) = B(T')$. Contradiction to the optimality of T' .

The assumption that x and y are brothers in T'' can be justified because a swap of elements with smallest frequency to the lowest level of the tree can at most decrease the value of B .

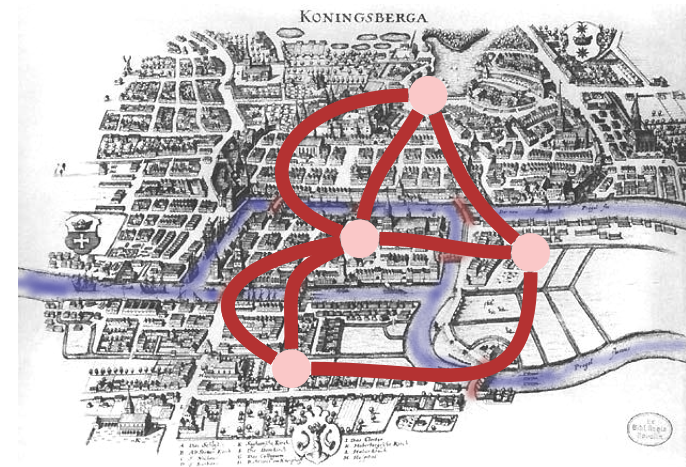
674

675

24. Graphs

Notation, Representation, Graph Traversal (DFS, BFS), Topological Sorting, Reflexive transitive closure, Connected components [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 9.1 - 9.4, Cormen et al, Kap. 22]

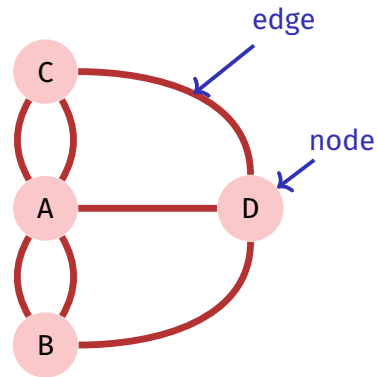
Königsberg 1736



676

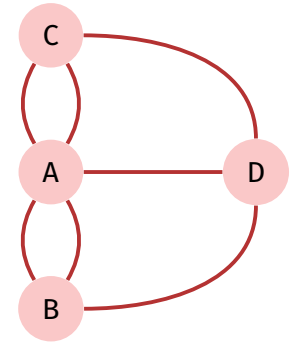
677

[Multi]Graph



Cycles

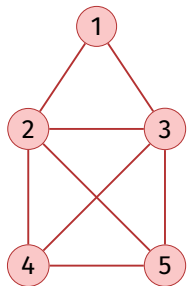
- Is there a cycle through the town (the graph) that uses each bridge (each edge) exactly once?
- Euler (1736): no.
- Such a cycle is called *Eulerian path*.
- Eulerian path \Leftrightarrow each node provides an even number of edges (each node is of an *even degree*).
 '⇒' is straightforward, "⇐" is a bit more difficult but still elementary.



678

679

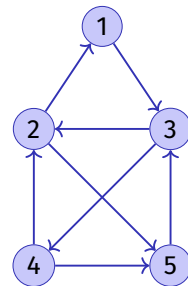
Notation



undirected

$$V = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$$

$$E = \{\{1, 2\}, \{1, 3\}, \{2, 3\}, \{2, 4\}, \{2, 5\}, \{3, 4\}, \{3, 5\}, \{4, 5\}\}$$



directed

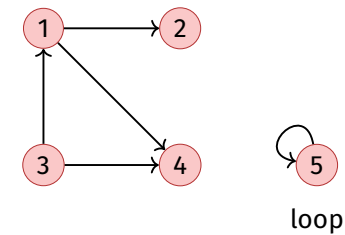
$$V = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$$

$$E = \{(1, 3), (2, 1), (2, 5), (3, 2), (3, 4), (4, 2), (4, 5), (5, 3)\}$$

680

Notation

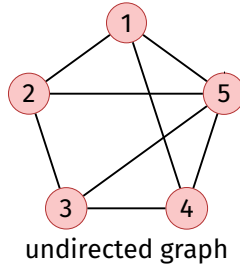
A directed graph consists of a set $V = \{v_1, \dots, v_n\}$ of nodes (*Vertices*) and a set $E \subseteq V \times V$ of Edges. The same edges may not be contained more than once.



681

Notation

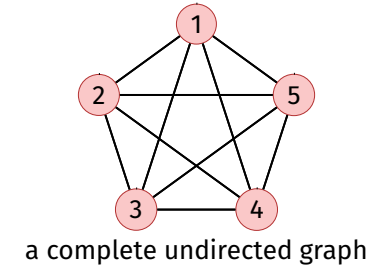
An undirected graph consists of a set $V = \{v_1, \dots, v_n\}$ of nodes and a set $E \subseteq \{\{u, v\} | u, v \in V\}$ of edges. Edges may not be contained more than once.³⁷



³⁷As opposed to the introductory example – it is then called multi-graph.

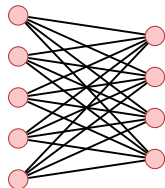
Notation

An undirected graph $G = (V, E)$ without loops where E comprises all edges between pairwise different nodes is called complete.



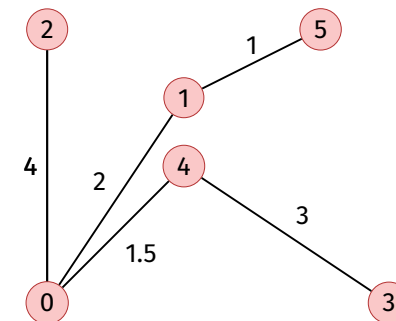
Notation

A graph where V can be partitioned into disjoint sets U and W such that each $e \in E$ provides a node in U and a node in W is called bipartite.



Notation

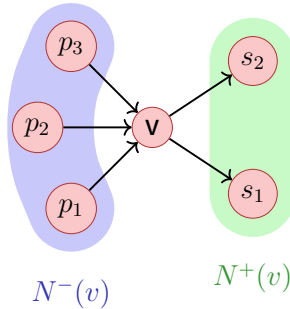
A weighted graph $G = (V, E, c)$ is a graph $G = (V, E)$ with an edge weight function $c : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. $c(e)$ is called weight of the edge e .



Notation

For directed graphs $G = (V, E)$

- $w \in V$ is called adjacent to $v \in V$, if $(v, w) \in E$
- Predecessors of $v \in V$: $N^-(v) := \{u \in V \mid (u, v) \in E\}$.
Successors: $N^+(v) := \{u \in V \mid (v, u) \in E\}$

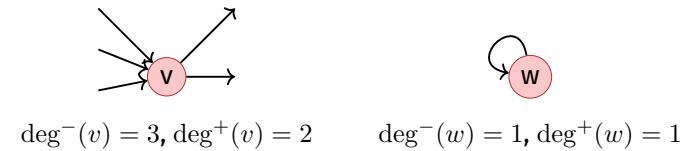


686

Notation

For directed graphs $G = (V, E)$

- In-Degree: $\deg^-(v) = |N^-(v)|$,
Out-Degree: $\deg^+(v) = |N^+(v)|$



687

Notation

For undirected graphs $G = (V, E)$:

- $w \in V$ is called adjacent to $v \in V$, if $\{v, w\} \in E$
- Neighbourhood of $v \in V$: $N(v) = \{w \in V \mid \{v, w\} \in E\}$
- Degree of v : $\deg(v) = |N(v)|$ with a special case for the loops: increase the degree by 2.



688

Node Degrees \leftrightarrow Number of Edges

For each graph $G = (V, E)$ it holds

1. $\sum_{v \in V} \deg^-(v) = \sum_{v \in V} \deg^+(v) = |E|$, for G directed
2. $\sum_{v \in V} \deg(v) = 2|E|$, for G undirected.

689

Paths

- Path: a sequence of nodes $\langle v_1, \dots, v_{k+1} \rangle$ such that for each $i \in \{1 \dots k\}$ there is an edge from v_i to v_{i+1} .
- Length of a path: number of contained edges k .
- Weight of a path (in weighted graphs): $\sum_{i=1}^k c((v_i, v_{i+1}))$ (bzw. $\sum_{i=1}^k c(\{v_i, v_{i+1}\})$)
- Simple path: path without repeating vertices

690

Simple Observations

- generally: $0 \leq |E| \in \mathcal{O}(|V|^2)$
- connected graph: $|E| \in \Omega(|V|)$
- complete graph: $|E| = \frac{|V| \cdot (|V|-1)}{2}$ (undirected)
- Maximally $|E| = |V|^2$ (directed), $|E| = \frac{|V| \cdot (|V|+1)}{2}$ (undirected)

692

Connectedness

- An undirected graph is called connected, if for each pair $v, w \in V$ there is a connecting path.
- A directed graph is called strongly connected, if for each pair $v, w \in V$ there is a connecting path.
- A directed graph is called weakly connected, if the corresponding undirected graph is connected.

691

Cycles

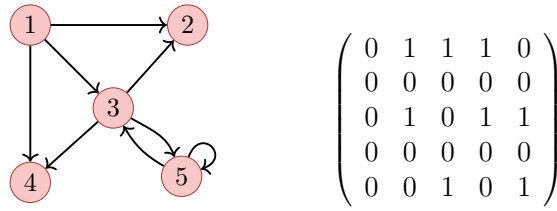
- Cycle: path $\langle v_1, \dots, v_{k+1} \rangle$ with $v_1 = v_{k+1}$
- Simple cycle: Cycle with pairwise different v_1, \dots, v_k , that does not use an edge more than once.
- Acyclic: graph without any cycles.

Conclusion: undirected graphs cannot contain cycles with length 2 (loops have length 1)

693

Representation using a Matrix

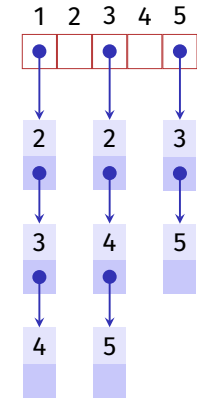
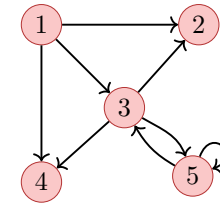
Graph $G = (V, E)$ with nodes v_1, \dots, v_n stored as adjacency matrix $A_G = (a_{ij})_{1 \leq i, j \leq n}$ with entries from $\{0, 1\}$. $a_{ij} = 1$ if and only if edge from v_i to v_j .



Memory consumption $\Theta(|V|^2)$. A_G is symmetric, if G undirected.

Representation with a List

Many graphs $G = (V, E)$ with nodes v_1, \dots, v_n provide much less than n^2 edges. Representation with adjacency list: Array $A[1], \dots, A[n]$, A_i comprises a linked list of nodes in $N^+(v_i)$.



Memory Consumption $\Theta(|V| + |E|)$.

694

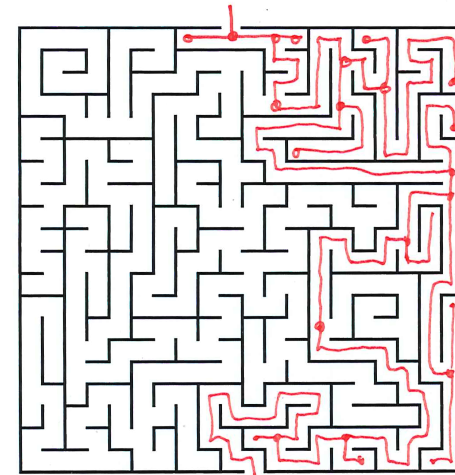
695

Runtimes of simple Operations

Operation	Matrix	List
Find neighbours/successors of $v \in V$	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(\deg^+ v)$
find $v \in V$ without neighbour/successor	$\Theta(n^2)$	$\Theta(n)$
$(v, u) \in E$?	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(\deg^+ v)$
Insert edge	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(1)$
Delete edge (v, u)	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(\deg^+ v)$

696

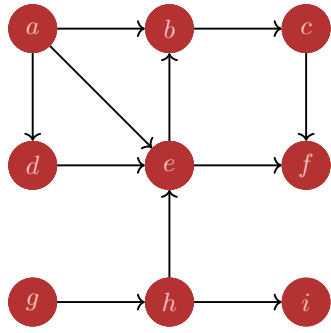
Depth First Search



697

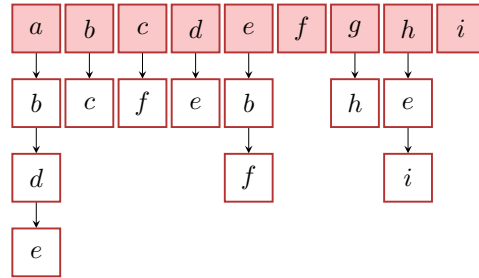
Graph Traversal: Depth First Search

Follow the path into its depth until nothing is left to visit.



Order $a, b, c, f, d, e, g, h, i$

adjacency list



Colors

Conceptual coloring of nodes

- **white:** node has not been discovered yet.
- **grey:** node has been discovered and is marked for traversal / being processed.
- **black:** node was discovered and entirely processed.

698

699

Algorithm Depth First visit DFS-Visit(G, v)

Input: graph $G = (V, E)$, Knoten v .

```

 $v.color \leftarrow grey$ 
foreach  $w \in N^+(v)$  do
    if  $w.color = white$  then
         $\quad$  DFS-Visit( $G, w$ )
 $v.color \leftarrow black$ 
    
```

Depth First Search starting from node v . Running time (without recursion): $\Theta(\deg^+ v)$

700

Algorithm Depth First visit DFS-Visit(G)

Input: graph $G = (V, E)$

```

foreach  $v \in V$  do
     $\quad$   $v.color \leftarrow white$ 
foreach  $v \in V$  do
    if  $v.color = white$  then
         $\quad$  DFS-Visit( $G, v$ )
    
```

Depth First Search for all nodes of a graph. Running time: $\Theta(|V| + \sum_{v \in V} (\deg^+(v) + 1)) = \Theta(|V| + |E|)$.

701

Iterative DFS-Visit(G, v)

Input: graph $G = (V, E)$, $v \in V$ with $v.color = \text{white}$

Stack $S \leftarrow \emptyset$

```
v.color ← grey; S.push(v)           // invariant: grey nodes always on stack
```

while $S \neq \emptyset$ **do**

$w \leftarrow \text{nextWhiteSuccessor}(v)$ // code: next slide

if $w \neq \text{null}$ **then**
$$w.color \leftarrow \text{grey}; S.\text{push}(w)$$

```

v ← w // work on w. parent remains on the stack

```

else

```
v.color ← black // no grey successors, v becomes black
```

if $S \neq \emptyset$ then

```

     $v \leftarrow S.\text{pop}()$  // visit/revisit next node

```

```

if  $v.color = grey$  then  $S.push(v)$ 

```

Memory Consumption Stack $\Theta(|V|)$

702

nextWhiteSuccessor(v)

Input: node $v \in V$

Output: Successor node u of v with $u.color = \text{white}$, null otherwise

foreach $u \in N^+(v)$ **do**

if $u.color = \text{white}$ **then**

return u

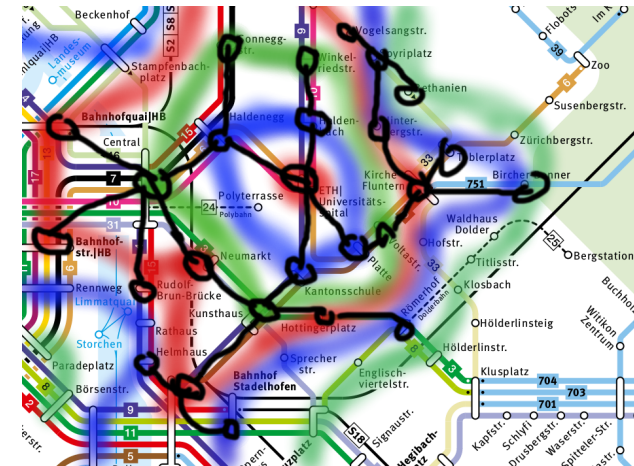
```
return null
```

Interpretation of the Colors

When traversing the graph, a tree (or Forest) is built. When nodes are discovered there are three cases

- White node: new tree edge
- Grey node: cycle ("back-edge")
- Black node: forward- / cross edge

Breadth First Search



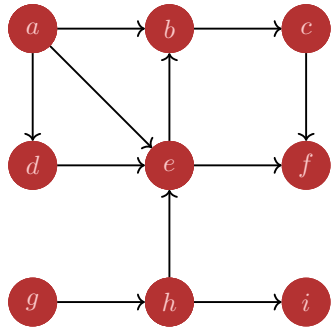
704

703

705

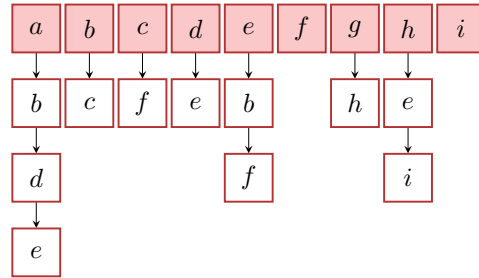
Graph Traversal: Breadth First Search

Follow the path in breadth and only then descend into depth.



Order $a, b, d, e, c, f, g, h, i$

Adjazenzliste



(Iterative) BFS-Visit(G, v)

Input: graph $G = (V, E)$

Queue $Q \leftarrow \emptyset$

$v.color \leftarrow \text{grey}$

enqueue(Q, v)

while $Q \neq \emptyset$ **do**

$w \leftarrow \text{dequeue}(Q)$

foreach $c \in N^+(w)$ **do**

if $c.color = \text{white}$ **then**

$c.color \leftarrow \text{grey}$

 enqueue(Q, c)

$w.color \leftarrow \text{black}$

Algorithm requires extra space of $\mathcal{O}(|V|)$.

706

707

Main program BFS-Visit(G)

Input: graph $G = (V, E)$

foreach $v \in V$ **do**

$v.color \leftarrow \text{white}$

foreach $v \in V$ **do**

if $v.color = \text{white}$ **then**

 BFS-Visit(G, v)

Breadth First Search for all nodes of a graph. Running time: $\Theta(|V| + |E|)$.

708

Topological Sorting

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1		Task 1	Task 2	Task 3	Task 4	Total		Note	
2	TOTAL	8	8	10	10	36			
3	Arlene	4	5	6	9	24		4	
4	Hans	1	3	2	3	9		1.5	
5	Mike	2	7	5	4	18		3	
6	Selina	6	5	8	2	21		3.5	
7									
8					Durchschnitt	18		3	
9									
10									
11									
12									
13									
14									

Evaluation Order?

709

Topological Sorting

Topological Sorting of an acyclic directed graph $G = (V, E)$:
Bijective mapping

$$\text{ord} : V \rightarrow \{1, \dots, |V|\}$$

such that

$$\text{ord}(v) < \text{ord}(w) \forall (v, w) \in E.$$

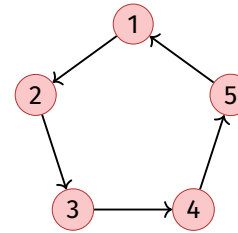
Identify i with Element $v_i := \text{ord}^{-1}(i)$. **Topological sorting** $\hat{=}$ $\langle v_1, \dots, v_{|V|} \rangle$.

Observation

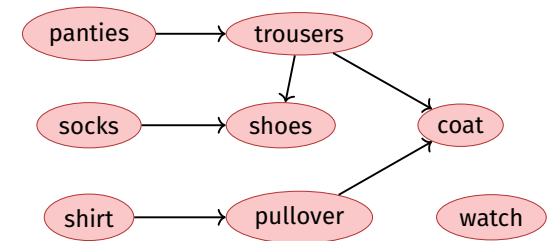
Theorem 20

A directed graph $G = (V, E)$ permits a topological sorting if and only if it is acyclic.

(Counter-)Examples



Cyclic graph: cannot be sorted topologically.



A possible topological sorting of the graph:
shirt, pullover, pants, watch, trousers, coat, socks, shoes

Proof “ \Rightarrow ”

If G contains a cycle it cannot permit a topological sorting, because in a cycle $\langle v_{i_1}, \dots, v_{i_m} \rangle$ it would hold that $v_{i_1} < \dots < v_{i_m} < v_{i_1}$.

Proof “ \Leftarrow ”

- Base case ($n = 1$): Graph with a single node without loop can be sorted topologically, set $\text{ord}(v_1) = 1$.
- Hypothesis: Graph with n nodes can be sorted topologically
- Step ($n \rightarrow n + 1$):
 1. G contains a node v_q with in-degree $\deg^-(v_q) = 0$. Otherwise iteratively follow edges backwards – after at most $n + 1$ iterations a node would be revisited. Contradiction to the cycle-freeness.
 2. Graph without node v_q and without its edges can be topologically sorted by the hypothesis. Now use this sorting and set $\text{ord}(v_i) \leftarrow \text{ord}(v_i) + 1$ for all $i \neq q$ and set $\text{ord}(v_q) \leftarrow 1$.

714

Algorithm Correctness

Theorem 21

Let $G = (V, E)$ be a directed acyclic graph. Algorithm **TopologicalSort**(G) computes a topological sorting ord for G with runtime $\Theta(|V| + |E|)$.

Proof: follows from previous theorem:

1. Decreasing the in-degree corresponds with node removal.
2. In the algorithm it holds for each node v with $A[v] = 0$ that either the node has in-degree 0 or that previously all predecessors have been assigned a value $\text{ord}[u] \leftarrow i$ and thus $\text{ord}[v] > \text{ord}[u]$ for all predecessors u of v . Nodes are put to the stack only once.
3. Runtime: inspection of the algorithm (with some arguments like with graph traversal)

716

Algorithm Topological-Sort(G)

Input: graph $G = (V, E)$.

Output: Topological sorting ord

Stack $S \leftarrow \emptyset$

foreach $v \in V$ **do** $A[v] \leftarrow 0$

foreach $(v, w) \in E$ **do** $A[w] \leftarrow A[w] + 1$ // Compute in-degrees

foreach $v \in V$ with $A[v] = 0$ **do** $\text{push}(S, v)$ // Memorize nodes with in-degree 0

$i \leftarrow 1$

while $S \neq \emptyset$ **do**

$v \leftarrow \text{pop}(S)$; $\text{ord}[v] \leftarrow i$; $i \leftarrow i + 1$ // Choose node with in-degree 0

foreach $(v, w) \in E$ **do** // Decrease in-degree of successors

$A[w] \leftarrow A[w] - 1$

if $A[w] = 0$ **then** $\text{push}(S, w)$

if $i = |V| + 1$ **then return** ord **else return** “Cycle Detected”

715

Algorithm Correctness

Theorem 22

Let $G = (V, E)$ be a directed graph containing a cycle. Algorithm **TopologicalSort** terminates within $\Theta(|V| + |E|)$ steps and detects a cycle.

Proof: let $\langle v_{i_1}, \dots, v_{i_k} \rangle$ be a cycle in G . In each step of the algorithm remains $A[v_{i_j}] \geq 1$ for all $j = 1, \dots, k$. Thus k nodes are never pushed on the stack and therefore at the end it holds that $i \leq |V| + 1 - k$.

The runtime of the second part of the algorithm can become shorter. But the computation of the in-degree costs already $\Theta(|V| + |E|)$.

717

Alternative: Algorithm DFS-Topsort(G, v)

Input: graph $G = (V, E)$, node v , node list L .

```

if  $v.color = \text{grey}$  then
  | stop (Cycle)
if  $v.color = \text{black}$  then
  | return
 $v.color \leftarrow \text{grey}$ 
foreach  $w \in N^+(v)$  do
  | DFS-Topsort( $G, w$ )
 $v.color \leftarrow \text{black}$ 
Add  $v$  to head of  $L$ 

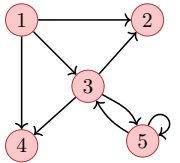
```

Call this algorithm for each node that has not yet been visited. Asymptotic Running Time $\Theta(|V| + |E|)$.

718

Adjacency Matrix Product

$$B := A_G^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$



719

Interpretation

Theorem 23

Let $G = (V, E)$ be a graph and $k \in \mathbb{N}$. Then the element $a_{i,j}^{(k)}$ of the matrix $(a_{i,j}^{(k)})_{1 \leq i,j \leq n} = (A_G)^k$ provides the number of paths with length k from v_i to v_j .

720

Proof

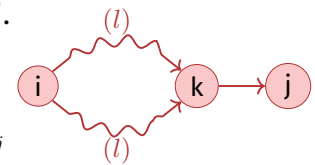
By Induction.

Base case: straightforward for $k = 1$. $a_{i,j} = a_{i,j}^{(1)}$.

Hypothesis: claim is true for all $k \leq l$

Step ($l \rightarrow l + 1$):

$$a_{i,j}^{(l+1)} = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{i,k}^{(l)} \cdot a_{k,j}$$



$a_{k,j} = 1$ iff edge k to j , 0 otherwise. Sum counts the number paths of length l from node v_i to all nodes v_k that provide a direct direction to node v_j , i.e. all paths with length $l + 1$.

721

Relation

Given a finite set V

(Binary) **Relation** R on V : Subset of the cartesian product

$$V \times V = \{(a, b) | a \in V, b \in V\}$$

Relation $R \subseteq V \times V$ is called

- reflexive, if $(v, v) \in R$ for all $v \in V$
- symmetric, if $(v, w) \in R \Rightarrow (w, v) \in R$
- transitive, if $(v, x) \in R, (x, w) \in R \Rightarrow (v, w) \in R$

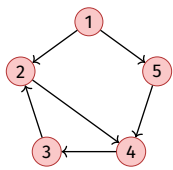
The (Reflexive) Transitive Closure R^* of R is the smallest extension $R \subseteq R^* \subseteq V \times V$ such that R^* is reflexive and transitive.

722

Reflexive Transitive Closure

Reflexive transitive closure of $G \Leftrightarrow$ Reachability relation E^* : $(v, w) \in E^*$
iff \exists path from node v to w .

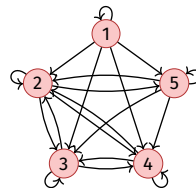
$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$



$G = (V, E)$

\Rightarrow

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$



$G^* = (V, E^*)$

724

Graphs and Relations

Graph $G = (V, E)$

adjacencies $A_G \triangleq$ Relation $E \subseteq V \times V$ over V

- reflexive $\Leftrightarrow a_{i,i} = 1$ for all $i = 1, \dots, n$. (loops)
- symmetric $\Leftrightarrow a_{i,j} = a_{j,i}$ for all $i, j = 1, \dots, n$ (undirected)
- transitive $\Leftrightarrow (u, v) \in E, (v, w) \in E \Rightarrow (u, w) \in E$. (reachability)

723

Algorithm $A \cdot A$

Input: (Adjacency-)Matrix $A = (a_{ij})_{i,j=1\dots n}$

Output: Matrix Product $B = (b_{ij})_{i,j=1\dots n} = A \cdot A$

$B \leftarrow 0$

for $r \leftarrow 1$ **to** n **do**

for $c \leftarrow 1$ **to** n **do**

for $k \leftarrow 1$ **to** n **do**

$b_{rc} \leftarrow b_{rc} + a_{rk} \cdot a_{kc}$

// Number of Paths

return B

Counts number of paths of length 2

725

Algorithm $A \otimes A$

Input: Adjacency-Matrix $A = (a_{ij})_{i,j=1\dots n}$

Output: Modified Matrix Product $B = (b_{ij})_{i,j=1\dots n} = A \otimes A$

```

 $B \leftarrow A$  // Keep paths
for  $r \leftarrow 1$  to  $n$  do
    for  $c \leftarrow 1$  to  $n$  do
        for  $k \leftarrow 1$  to  $n$  do
             $b_{rc} \leftarrow \max\{b_{rc}, a_{rk} \cdot a_{kc}\}$  // Path: yes/no
return  $B$ 

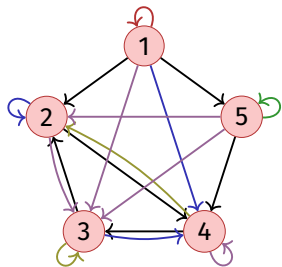
```

Computes which paths of length 1 and 2 exist

726

Improvement: Algorithm of Warshall (1962)

Inductive procedure: all paths known over nodes from $\{v_i : i < k\}$. Add node v_k .



$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

728

Computation of the Reflexive Transitive Closure

Goal: computation of $B = (b_{ij})_{1 \leq i,j \leq n}$ with $b_{ij} = 1 \Leftrightarrow (v_i, v_j) \in E^*$ First idea:

- Start with $B \leftarrow A$ and set $b_{ii} = 1$ for each i (Reflexivity.).
- Compute

$$B_n = \bigotimes_{i=1}^n B$$

with powers of 2 $B_2 := B \otimes B, B_4 := B_2 \otimes B_2, B_8 = B_4 \otimes B_4 \dots$
 \Rightarrow running time $n^3 \lceil \log_2 n \rceil$

727

Algorithm TransitiveClosure(A_G)

Input: Adjacency matrix $A_G = (a_{ij})_{i,j=1\dots n}$

Output: Reflexive transitive closure $B = (b_{ij})_{i,j=1\dots n}$ of G

```

 $B \leftarrow A_G$ 
for  $k \leftarrow 1$  to  $n$  do
     $b_{kk} \leftarrow 1$  // Reflexivity
    for  $r \leftarrow 1$  to  $n$  do
        for  $c \leftarrow 1$  to  $n$  do
             $b_{rc} \leftarrow \max\{b_{rc}, b_{rk} \cdot b_{kc}\}$  // All paths via  $v_k$ 
return  $B$ 

```

Runtime $\Theta(n^3)$.

729

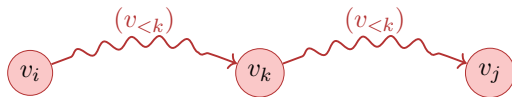
Correctness of the Algorithm (Induction)

Invariant (k): all paths via nodes with maximal index $< k$ considered.

■ **Base case ($k = 1$):** All directed paths (all edges) in A_G considered.

■ **Hypothesis:** invariant (k) fulfilled.

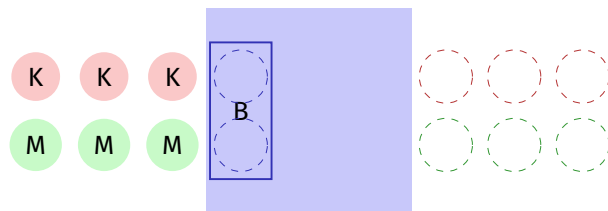
■ **Step ($k \rightarrow k + 1$):** For each path from v_i to v_j via nodes with maximal index k : by the hypothesis $b_{ik} = 1$ and $b_{kj} = 1$. Therefore in the k -th iteration: $b_{ij} \leftarrow 1$.



730

River Crossing (Missionaries and Cannibals)

Problem: Three cannibals and three missionaries are standing at a river bank. The available boat can carry two people. At no time may at any place (banks or boat) be more cannibals than missionaries. How can the missionaries and cannibals cross the river as fast as possible? ³⁸



³⁸There are slight variations of this problem. It is equivalent to the jealous husbands problem.

732

25. Shortest Paths

Motivation, Universal Algorithm, Dijkstra's algorithm on distance graphs, Bellman-Ford Algorithm, Floyd-Warshall Algorithm, Johnson Algorithm [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 9.5 Cormen et al, Kap. 24.1-24.3, 25.2-25.3]

731

Problem as Graph

Enumerate permitted configurations as nodes and connect them with an edge, when a crossing is allowed. The problem then becomes a shortest path problem.

Example

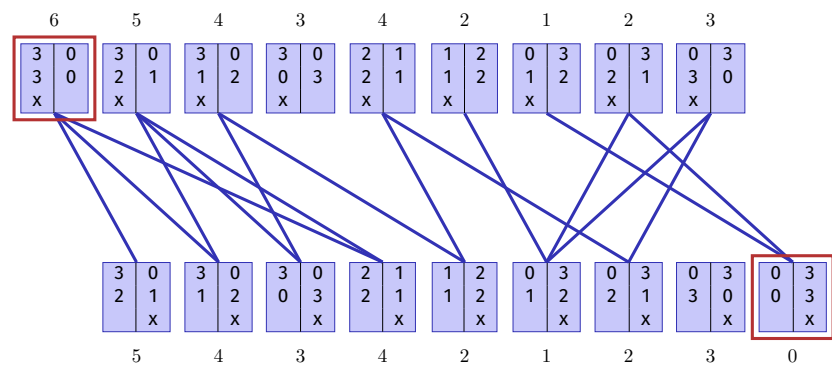
	links	rechts	Possible crossing		links	rechts
missionaries	3	0		missionaries	2	1
cannibals	3	0		cannibals	2	1
boat	x			boat		x

6 People on the left bank

4 People on the left bank

733

The whole problem as a graph

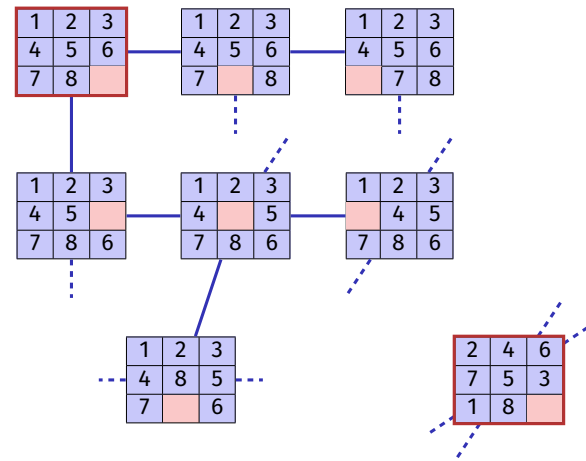


Another Example: Mystic Square

Want to find the fastest solution for

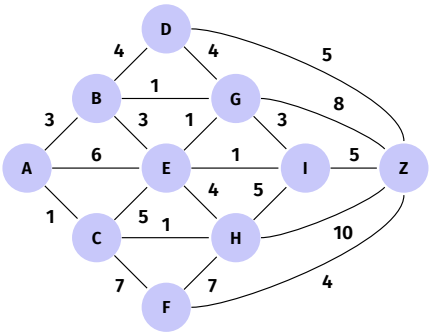


Problem as Graph



Route Finding

Provided cities A - Z and distances between cities.

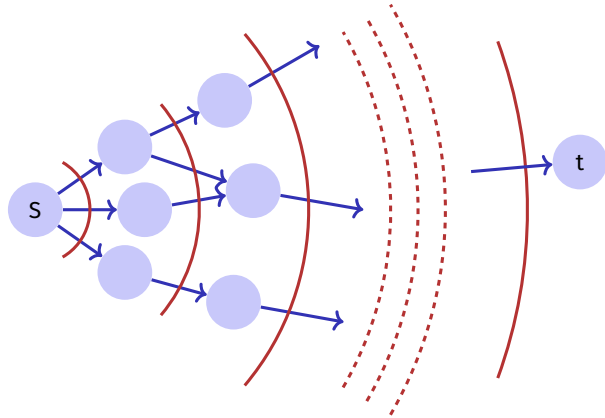


What is the shortest path from A to Z?

Simplest Case

Constant edge weight 1 (wlog)

Solution: Breadth First Search



738

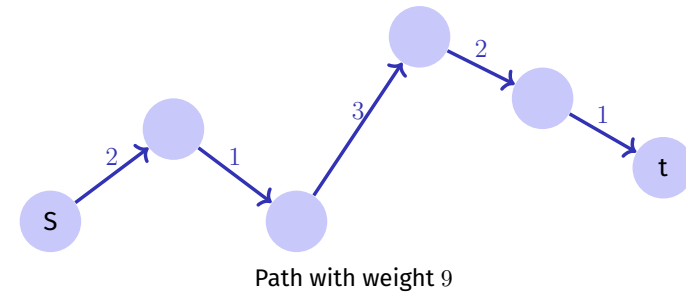
Weighted Graphs

Given: $G = (V, E, c)$, $c : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $s, t \in V$.

Wanted: length (weight) of a shortest path from s to t .

Path: $p = \langle s = v_0, v_1, \dots, v_k = t \rangle$, $(v_i, v_{i+1}) \in E$ ($0 \leq i < k$)

Weight: $c(p) := \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} c((v_i, v_{i+1}))$.



739

Shortest Paths

Notation: we write

$$u \overset{p}{\rightsquigarrow} v \quad \text{oder} \quad p : u \rightsquigarrow v$$

and mean a path p from u to v

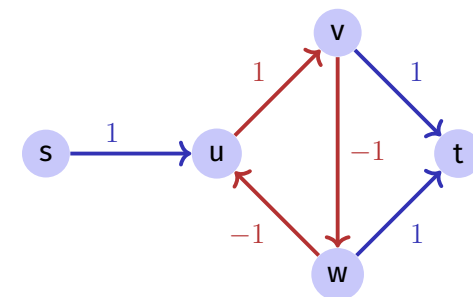
Notation: $\delta(u, v)$ = weight of a shortest path from u to v :

$$\delta(u, v) = \begin{cases} \infty & \text{no path from } u \text{ to } v \\ \min\{c(p) : u \overset{p}{\rightsquigarrow} v\} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

740

Observations (1)

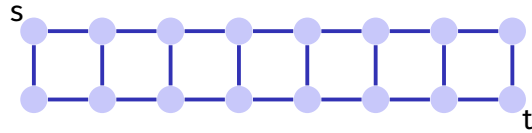
It may happen that a shortest paths does not exist: negative cycles can occur.



741

Observations (2)

There can be exponentially many paths.



(at least $2^{|V|/2}$ paths from s to t)

⇒ To try all paths is too inefficient

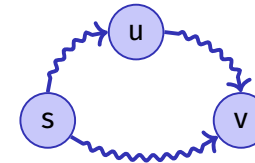
742

Observations (3)

Triangle Inequality

For all $s, u, v \in V$:

$$\delta(s, v) \leq \delta(s, u) + \delta(u, v)$$



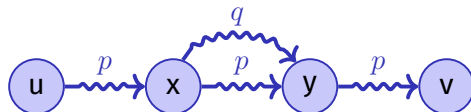
A shortest path from s to v cannot be longer than a shortest path from s to v that has to include u

743

Observations (4)

Optimal Substructure

Sub-paths of shortest paths are shortest paths. Let $p = \langle v_0, \dots, v_k \rangle$ be a shortest path from v_0 to v_k . Then each of the sub-paths $p_{ij} = \langle v_i, \dots, v_j \rangle$ ($0 \leq i < j \leq k$) is a shortest path from v_i to v_j .



If not, then one of the sub-paths could be shortened which immediately leads to a contradiction.

744

Observations (5)

Shortest paths do not contain cycles

1. Shortest path contains a negative cycle: there is no shortest path, contradiction
2. Path contains a positive cycle: removing the cycle from the path will reduce the weight. Contradiction.
3. Path contains a cycle with weight 0: removing the cycle from the path will not change the weight. Remove the cycle (convention).

745

Ingredients of an Algorithm

Wanted: shortest paths from a starting node s .

- Weight of the shortest path found so far

$$d_s : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

At the beginning: $d_s[v] = \infty$ for all $v \in V$.

Goal: $d_s[v] = \delta(s, v)$ for all $v \in V$.

- Predecessor of a node

$$\pi_s : V \rightarrow V$$

Initially $\pi_s[v]$ undefined for each node $v \in V$

General Algorithm

1. Initialise d_s and π_s : $d_s[v] = \infty$, $\pi_s[v] = \text{null}$ for each $v \in V$
2. Set $d_s[s] \leftarrow 0$
3. Choose an edge $(u, v) \in E$

Relaxiere (u, v) :

if $d_s[v] > d_s[u] + c(u, v)$ then

$d_s[v] \leftarrow d_s[u] + c(u, v)$

$\pi_s[v] \leftarrow u$

4. Repeat 3 until nothing can be relaxed any more.
(until $d_s[v] \leq d_s[u] + c(u, v) \quad \forall (u, v) \in E$)

746

747

It is Safe to Relax

At any time in the algorithm above it holds

$$d_s[v] \geq \delta(s, v) \quad \forall v \in V$$

In the relaxation step:

$$\delta(s, v) \leq \delta(s, u) + \delta(u, v) \quad [\text{Triangle Inequality}]$$

$$\delta(s, u) \leq d_s[u] \quad [\text{Induction Hypothesis}]$$

$$\delta(u, v) \leq c(u, v) \quad [\text{Minimality of } \delta]$$

$$\Rightarrow d_s[u] + c(u, v) \geq \delta(s, v)$$

$$\Rightarrow \min\{d_s[v], d_s[u] + c(u, v)\} \geq \delta(s, v)$$

748

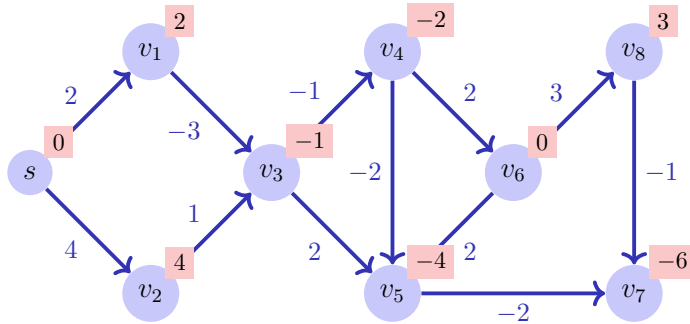
Central Question

How / in which order should edges be chosen in above algorithm?

749

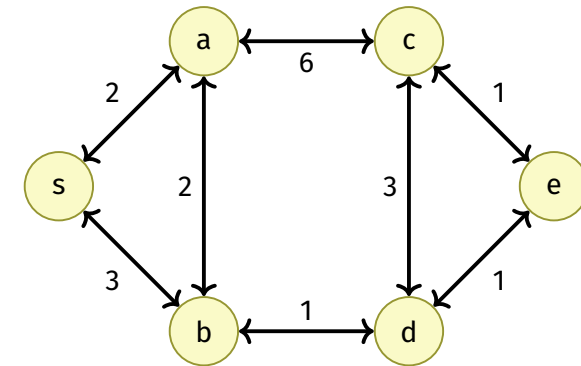
Special Case: Directed Acyclic Graph (DAG)

DAG \Rightarrow topological sorting returns optimal visiting order



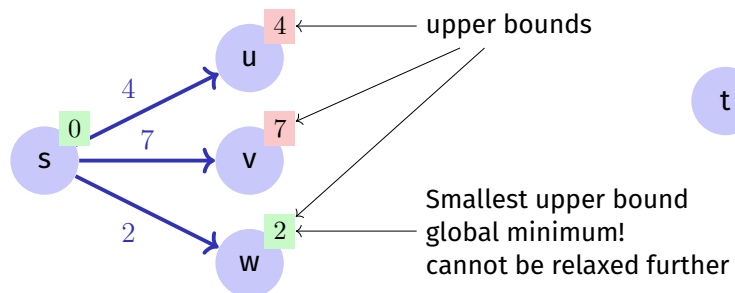
Top. Sort: \Rightarrow Order $s, v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4, v_6, v_5, v_8, v_7$.

Assumption (preliminary)



All weights of G are positive.

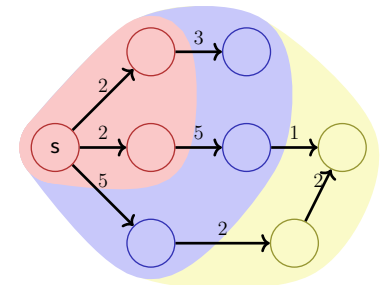
Observation (Dijkstra)



Basic Idea

Set V of nodes is partitioned into

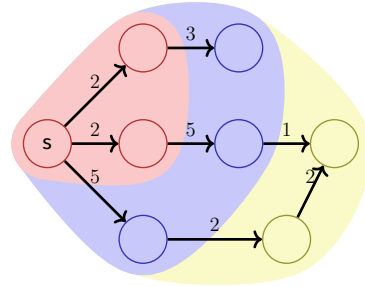
- the set M of nodes for which a shortest path from s is already known,
- the set $R = \bigcup_{v \in M} N^+(v) \setminus M$ of nodes where a shortest path is not yet known but that are accessible directly from M ,
- the set $U = V \setminus (M \cup R)$ of nodes that have not yet been considered.



Induction

Induction over $|M|$: choose nodes from R with smallest upper bound. Add r to M and update R and U accordingly.

Correctness: if within the “wavefront” a node with minimal weight w has been found then no path over later nodes (providing weight $\geq d$) can provide any improvement.



754

Algorithm Dijkstra(G, s)

Input: Positively weighted Graph $G = (V, E, c)$, starting point $s \in V$,

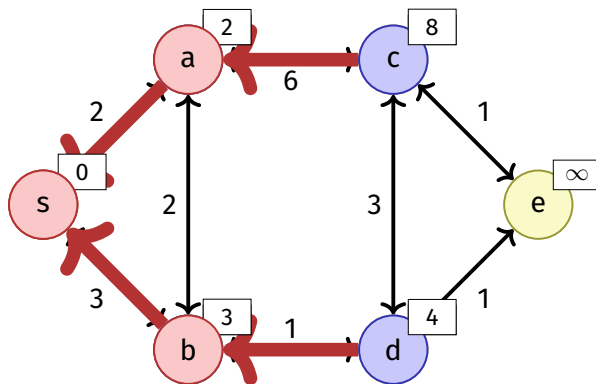
Output: Minimal weights d of the shortest paths and corresponding predecessor node for each node.

```

foreach  $u \in V$  do
     $d_s[u] \leftarrow \infty$ ;  $\pi_s[u] \leftarrow \text{null}$ 
 $d_s[s] \leftarrow 0$ ;  $R \leftarrow \{s\}$ 
while  $R \neq \emptyset$  do
     $u \leftarrow \text{ExtractMin}(R)$ 
    foreach  $v \in N^+(u)$  do
        if  $d_s[u] + c(u, v) < d_s[v]$  then
             $d_s[v] \leftarrow d_s[u] + c(u, v)$ 
             $\pi_s[v] \leftarrow u$ 
             $R \leftarrow R \cup \{v\}$ 
    
```

755

Example



$M = \{s, a, b\}$

$R = \{c, d\}$

$U = \{e\}$

756

Implementation: Data Structure for R ?

Required operations:

■ Insert (add to R)

■ ExtractMin (over R) and DecreaseKey (Update in R)

```

foreach  $v \in N^+(u)$  do
    if  $d_s[u] + c(u, v) < d_s[v]$  then
         $d_s[v] \leftarrow d_s[u] + c(u, v)$ 
         $\pi_s[v] \leftarrow u$ 
        if  $v \in R$  then
            DecreaseKey( $R, v$ )
        else
             $R \leftarrow R \cup \{v\}$ 
    
```

// Update of a $d(v)$ in the heap of R

// Update of $d(v)$ in the heap of R

MinHeap!

757

DecreaseKey

- **DecreaseKey:** climbing in MinHeap in $\mathcal{O}(\log |V|)$
- **Position in the heap?**
 - alternative (a): Store position at the nodes
 - alternative (b): Hashtable of the nodes
 - alternative (c): re-insert node after successful relax operation and mark it "deleted" once extracted (Lazy Deletion).³⁹

³⁹For lazy deletion a pair of edge (or target node) and distance is required.

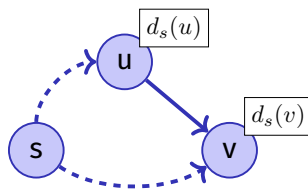
758

General Weighted Graphs

Relaxing Step as before but with a return value:

```

Relax( $u, v$ ) ( $u, v \in V, (u, v) \in E$ )
if  $d_s[u] + c(u, v) < d_s[v]$  then
     $d_s[v] \leftarrow d_s[u] + c(u, v)$ 
     $\pi_s[v] \leftarrow u$ 
    return true
return false
    
```



Problem: cycles with negative weights can shorten the path, a shortest path is not guaranteed to exist.

760

Runtime

- $|V| \times$ ExtractMin: $\mathcal{O}(|V| \log |V|)$
- $|E| \times$ Insert or DecreaseKey: $\mathcal{O}(|E| \log |V|)$
- $1 \times$ Init: $\mathcal{O}(|V|)$
- Overall⁴⁰: $\mathcal{O}((|V| + |E|) \log |V|)$

Can be improved when a data structure optimized for ExtractMin and DecreaseKey is used (Fibonacci Heap), then runtime $\mathcal{O}(|E| + |V| \log |V|)$.

⁴⁰ $\mathcal{O}(|E| \log |V|)$ for connected graphs

759

Dynamic Programming Approach (Bellman)

Induction over number of edges $d_s[i, v]$: Shortest path from s to v via maximally i edges.

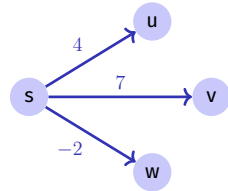
$$d_s[i, v] = \min\{d_s[i-1, v], \min_{(u,v) \in E} (d_s[i-1, u] + c(u, v))\}$$

$$d_s[0, s] = 0, d_s[0, v] = \infty \forall v \neq s.$$

761

Dynamic Programming Approach (Bellman)

	s	\dots	v	\dots	w
0	0	∞	∞	∞	∞
1	0	∞	7	∞	-2
\vdots	\vdots	\vdots	\vdots	\vdots	\vdots
$n-1$	0	\dots	\dots	\dots	\dots



Algorithm: Iterate over last row until the relaxation steps do not provide any further changes, maximally $n-1$ iterations. If still changes, then there is no shortest path.

762

Algorithm Bellman-Ford(G, s)

Input: Graph $G = (V, E, c)$, starting point $s \in V$

Output: If return value true, minimal weights d for all shortest paths from s , otherwise no shortest path.

```

foreach  $u \in V$  do
   $d_s[u] \leftarrow \infty$ ;  $\pi_s[u] \leftarrow \text{null}$ 
 $d_s[s] \leftarrow 0$ ;
for  $i \leftarrow 1$  to  $|V|$  do
   $f \leftarrow \text{false}$ 
  foreach  $(u, v) \in E$  do
     $f \leftarrow f \vee \text{Relax}(u, v)$ 
  if  $f = \text{false}$  then return true
return false;
  
```

763

All shortest Paths

Compute the weight of a shortest path for each pair of nodes.

- $|V| \times$ Application of Dijkstra's Shortest Path algorithm
 $\mathcal{O}(|V| \cdot (|E| + |V|) \cdot \log |V|)$ (with Fibonacci Heap: $\mathcal{O}(|V|^2 \log |V| + |V| \cdot |E|)$)
- $|V| \times$ Application of Bellman-Ford: $\mathcal{O}(|E| \cdot |V|^2)$
- There are better ways!

Induction via node number

Consider weights of all shortest paths S^k with intermediate nodes in⁴¹ $V^k := \{v_1, \dots, v_k\}$, provided that weights for all shortest paths S^{k-1} with intermediate nodes in V^{k-1} are given.

- v_k no intermediate node of a shortest path of $v_i \rightsquigarrow v_j$ in V^k : Weight of a shortest path $v_i \rightsquigarrow v_j$ in S^{k-1} is then also weight of shortest path in S^k .
- v_k intermediate node of a shortest path $v_i \rightsquigarrow v_j$ in V^k : Sub-paths $v_i \rightsquigarrow v_k$ and $v_k \rightsquigarrow v_j$ contain intermediate nodes only from S^{k-1} .

⁴¹like for the algorithm of the reflexive transitive closure of Warshall

764

765

DP Induction

$d^k(u, v)$ = Minimal weight of a path $u \rightsquigarrow v$ with intermediate nodes in V^k

Induktion

$$d^k(u, v) = \min\{d^{k-1}(u, v), d^{k-1}(u, k) + d^{k-1}(k, v)\} (k \geq 1)$$

$$d^0(u, v) = c(u, v)$$

DP Algorithm Floyd-Warshall(G)

Input: Graph $G = (V, E, c)$ without negative weight cycles.

Output: Minimal weights of all paths d

$d^0 \leftarrow c$

for $k \leftarrow 1$ **to** $|V|$ **do**

for $i \leftarrow 1$ **to** $|V|$ **do**

for $j \leftarrow 1$ **to** $|V|$ **do**

$d^k(v_i, v_j) = \min\{d^{k-1}(v_i, v_j), d^{k-1}(v_i, v_k) + d^{k-1}(v_k, v_j)\}$

Runtime: $\Theta(|V|^3)$

Remark: Algorithm can be executed with a single matrix d (in place).

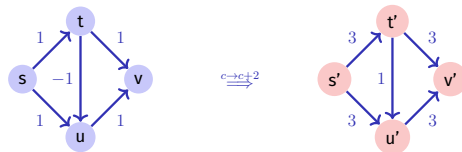
766

767

Reweighting

Idea: Reweighting the graph in order to apply Dijkstra's algorithm.

The following does not work. The graphs are not equivalent in terms of shortest paths.



768

Reweighting

Other Idea: "Potential" (Height) on the nodes

■ $G = (V, E, c)$ a weighted graph.

■ Mapping $h : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

■ New weights

$$\tilde{c}(u, v) = c(u, v) + h(u) - h(v), (u, v \in V)$$

769

Reweighting

Observation: A path p is shortest path in in $G = (V, E, c)$ iff it is shortest path in in $\tilde{G} = (V, E, \tilde{c})$

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{c}(p) &= \sum_{i=1}^k \tilde{c}(v_{i-1}, v_i) = \sum_{i=1}^k c(v_{i-1}, v_i) + h(v_{i-1}) - h(v_i) \\ &= h(v_0) - h(v_k) + \sum_{i=1}^k c(v_{i-1}, v_i) = c(p) + h(v_0) - h(v_k)\end{aligned}$$

Thus $\tilde{c}(p)$ minimal in all $v_0 \rightsquigarrow v_k \iff c(p)$ minimal in all $v_0 \rightsquigarrow v_k$.

Weights of cycles are invariant: $\tilde{c}(v_0, \dots, v_k = v_0) = c(v_0, \dots, v_k = v_0)$

770

Johnson's Algorithm

If no negative cycles, choose as height function the weight of the shortest paths from s ,

$$h(v) = d(s, v).$$

For a minimal weight d of a path the following triangular inequality holds:

$$d(s, v) \leq d(s, u) + c(u, v).$$

Substitution yields $h(v) \leq h(u) + c(u, v)$. Therefore

$$\tilde{c}(u, v) = c(u, v) + h(u) - h(v) \geq 0.$$

772

Johnson's Algorithm

Add a new node $s \notin V$:

$$G' = (V', E', c')$$

$$V' = V \cup \{s\}$$

$$E' = E \cup \{(s, v) : v \in V\}$$

$$c'(u, v) = c(u, v), \quad u \neq s$$

$$c'(s, v) = 0 (v \in V)$$

771

Algorithm Johnson(G)

Input: Weighted Graph $G = (V, E, c)$

Output: Minimal weights of all paths D .

New node s . Compute $G' = (V', E', c')$

if BellmanFord(G', s) = false **then** return "graph has negative cycles"

foreach $v \in V'$ **do**

$h(v) \leftarrow d(s, v)$ // d aus BellmanFord Algorithmus

foreach $(u, v) \in E'$ **do**

$\tilde{c}(u, v) \leftarrow c(u, v) + h(u) - h(v)$

foreach $u \in V$ **do**

$\tilde{d}(u, \cdot) \leftarrow \text{Dijkstra}(\tilde{G}', u)$

foreach $v \in V$ **do**

$D(u, v) \leftarrow \tilde{d}(u, v) + h(v) - h(u)$

773

Analysis

Runtimes

- Computation of G' : $\mathcal{O}(|V|)$
- Bellman Ford G' : $\mathcal{O}(|V| \cdot |E|)$
- $|V| \times$ Dijkstra $\mathcal{O}(|V| \cdot |E| \cdot \log |V|)$
(with Fibonacci Heap: $\mathcal{O}(|V|^2 \log |V| + |V| \cdot |E|)$)

Overall $\mathcal{O}(|V| \cdot |E| \cdot \log |V|)$
($\mathcal{O}(|V|^2 \log |V| + |V| \cdot |E|)$)

Disclaimer

These slides contain the most important formalities around the A*-algorithm and its correctness. We motivate the algorithm in the lectures and give more examples there.

Another nice motivation of the algorithm can found here:

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bRvs8r0QU-Q>

25.8 A*-Algorithm

A*-Algorithm

Prerequisites

- Positively weighted graph $G = (V, E, c)$
- G finite or δ -Graph: $\exists \delta > 0 : c(e) \geq \delta$ for all $e \in E$
- $s \in V, t \in V$
- Distance estimate $\hat{h}_t(v) \leq h_t(v) := \delta(v, t) \forall v \in V$.
- Wanted: shortest path $p : s \rightsquigarrow t$

A*-Algorithm(G, s, t, \hat{h})

Input: Positively weighted Graph $G = (V, E, c)$, starting point $s \in V$, end point $t \in V$, estimate $\hat{h}(v) \leq \delta(v, t)$

Output: Existence and value of a shortest path from s to t

foreach $u \in V$ **do**

$d[u] \leftarrow \infty$; $\hat{f}[u] \leftarrow \infty$; $\pi[u] \leftarrow \text{null}$

$d[s] \leftarrow 0$; $\hat{f}[s] \leftarrow \hat{h}(s)$; $R \leftarrow \{s\}$; $M \leftarrow \{\}$

while $R \neq \emptyset$ **do**

$u \leftarrow \text{ExtractMin}_{\hat{f}}(R)$; $M \leftarrow M \cup \{u\}$

if $u = t$ **then return** success

foreach $v \in N^+(u)$ with $d[v] > d[u] + c(u, v)$ **do**

$d[v] \leftarrow d[u] + c(u, v)$; $\hat{f}[v] \leftarrow d[v] + \hat{h}(v)$; $\pi[v] \leftarrow u$

$R \leftarrow R \cup \{v\}$; $M \leftarrow M - \{v\}$

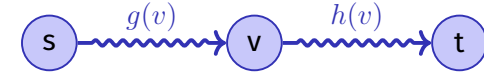
return failure

778

Notation

Let $f(v)$ be the distance of a shortest path from s to t via v , thus

$$f(v) := \underbrace{\delta(s, v)}_{g(v)} + \underbrace{\delta(v, t)}_{h(v)}$$



let p be a shortest path from s to t .

It holds that $f(s) = \delta(s, t)$ and $f(v) = f(s)$ for all $v \in p$.

Let $\hat{g}(v) := d[v]$ be an estimate of $g(v)$ in the algorithm above. It holds that $\hat{g}(v) \geq g(v)$.

$\hat{h}(v)$ is an estimate of $h(v)$ with $\hat{h}(v) \leq h(v)$.

779

Why the Algorithm Works

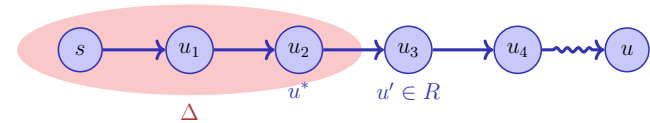
Lemma 24

Let $u \in V$ and, at a time during the execution of the algorithm, $u \notin M$. Let p be a shortest path from s to u . Then there is a $u' \in p$ with $\hat{g}(u') = g(u')$ and $u' \in R$.

The lemma states that there is always a node in the open set R with the minimal distance from s already computed and that belongs to a shortest path (if existing).

780

Illustration and Proof



Proof: If $s \in R$, then $\hat{g}(s) = g(s) = 0$. Therefore, let $s \notin R$.

Let $p = \langle s = u_0, u_1, \dots, u_k = u \rangle$ and $\Delta = \{u_i \in p, u_i \in M, \hat{g}(u_i) = g(u_i)\}$. $\Delta \neq \emptyset$, because $s \in \Delta$.

Let $m = \max\{i : u_i \in \Delta\}$, $u^* = u_m$. Then $u^* \neq u$, since $u \notin M$. Let $u' = u_{m+1}$.

1. $\hat{g}(u') \leq \hat{g}(u^*) + c(u^*, u')$ because u' has already been relaxed
2. $\hat{g}(u^*) = g(u^*)$ (because $u^* \in \Delta$)
3. $\hat{g}(u') \geq g(u')$ (construction of \hat{g})
4. $g(u') = g(u^*) + c(u^*, u')$ (because p optimal)

Therefore: $\hat{g}(u') = g(u')$ and thus also $u' \in R$ because $u' \notin \Delta$. ■

781

Corollary

Corollary 25

If $\hat{h}(u) \leq h(u)$ for all $u \in V$ and A*-Algorithmus has not yet terminated. The for each shortest path p from s to t there is some node $u' \in p$ with $\hat{f}(u') \leq \delta(s, t) = f(t)$.

If there is a shortest path p from s to t , then there is always a node in the open set R that underestimates the overall distance and that is on the shortest path.

782

Admissibility

Theorem 26

If there is a shortest path from s to t and $\hat{h}(u) \leq h(u) \forall u \in V$ then A* terminates with $\hat{g}(t) = \delta(s, t)$

Proof: If the algorithm terminates, then it terminates with t with $f(t) = \hat{g}(t) + 0 = g(t)$. That is because \hat{g} overestimates g at most and by the corollary above that algorithm always finds an element $v \in R$ with $f(v) \leq \delta(s, t)$.

The algorithm terminates in finitely many steps. For finite graphs the maximal number of relaxing steps is bounded.

⁴²

⁴²For a δ -graph the maximum number of relaxing steps before R contains only nodes with $\hat{f}(s) > \delta(s, t)$ is limited as well. The exact argument can be found in the seminal article Hart, P. E.; Nilsson, N. J.; Raphael, B. (1968). "A Formal Basis for the Heuristic Determination of Minimum Cost Paths".

784

Proof of the Corollary

Proof:

From the lemma: $\exists u' \in p$ with $\hat{g}(u') = g(u')$.

Therefore:

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{f}(u') &= \hat{g}(u') + \hat{h}(u') \\ &= g(u') + \hat{h}(u') \\ &\leq g(u') + h(u') = f(u')\end{aligned}$$

Because p is shortest path: $f(u') = \delta(s, t)$. ■

783

Revisiting nodes

- The A*-algorithm can re-insert nodes that had been extracted from R before.
- This can lead to suboptimal behavior (w.r.t. running time of the algorithm).
- If \hat{h} , in addition to being admissible ($\hat{h}(v) \leq h(v)$ for all $v \in V$), fulfils monotonicity, i.e. if for all $(u, u') \in E$:

$$\hat{h}(u') \leq \hat{h}(u) + c(u', u)$$

then the A*-Algorithm is equivalent to the Dijkstra-algorithm with edge weights $\tilde{c}(u, v) = c(u, v) + \hat{h}(u) - \hat{h}(v)$, and no node is re-inserted into R .

- It is not always possible to find monotone heuristics.

785

26. Minimum Spanning Trees

Motivation, Greedy, Algorithm Kruskal, General Rules, ADT Union-Find, Algorithm Jarnik, Prim, Dijkstra, Fibonacci Heaps [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 9.6, 6.2, 6.1, Cormen et al, Kap. 23, 19]

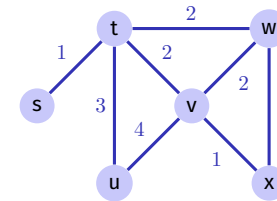
Application Examples

- Network-Design: find the cheapest / shortest network that connects all nodes.
- Approximation of a solution of the travelling salesman problem: find a round-trip, as short as possible, that visits each node once.

Problem

Given: Undirected, weighted, connected graph $G = (V, E, c)$.

Wanted: Minimum Spanning Tree $T = (V, E')$: connected, cycle-free subgraph $E' \subset E$, such that $\sum_{e \in E'} c(e)$ minimal.



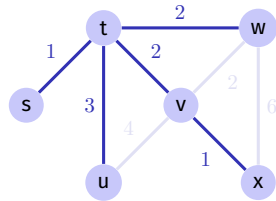
Greedy Procedure

Recall:

- Greedy algorithms compute the solution stepwise choosing locally optimal solutions.
- Most problems cannot be solved with a greedy algorithm.
- The Minimum Spanning Tree problem can be solved with a greedy strategy.

Greedy Idea (Kruskal, 1956)

Construct T by adding the cheapest edge that does not generate a cycle.



(Solution is not unique.)

Algorithm MST-Kruskal(G)

Input: Weighted Graph $G = (V, E, c)$

Output: Minimum spanning tree with edges A .

Sort edges by weight $c(e_1) \leq \dots \leq c(e_m)$

$A \leftarrow \emptyset$

```

for  $k = 1$  to  $|E|$  do
    if  $(V, A \cup \{e_k\})$  acyclic then
         $A \leftarrow A \cup \{e_k\}$ 
    
```

return (V, A, c)

790

791

Correctness

At each point in the algorithm (V, A) is a forest, a set of trees.

MST-Kruskal considers each edge e_k exactly once and either chooses or rejects e_k

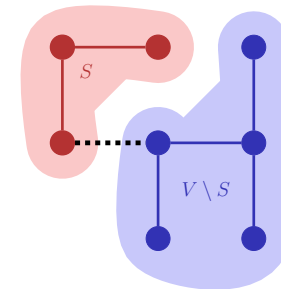
Notation (snapshot of the state in the running algorithm)

- A : Set of selected edges
- R : Set of rejected edges
- U : Set of yet undecided edges

Cut

A cut of G is a partition $S, V - S$ of V . ($S \subseteq V$).

An edge crosses a cut when one of its endpoints is in S and the other is in $V \setminus S$.



792

793

Rules

1. Selection rule: choose a cut that is not crossed by a selected edge. Of all undecided edges that cross the cut, select the one with minimal weight.
2. Rejection rule: choose a cycle without rejected edges. Of all undecided edges of the cycle, reject those with maximal weight.

794

Correctness

Theorem 27

Every algorithm that applies the rules above in a step-wise manner until $U = \emptyset$ is correct.

Consequence: MST-Kruskal is correct.

796

Rules

Kruskal applies both rules:

1. A selected e_k connects two connection components, otherwise it would generate a cycle. e_k is minimal, i.e. a cut can be chosen such that e_k crosses and e_k has minimal weight.
2. A rejected e_k is contained in a cycle. Within the cycle e_k has maximal weight.

795

Selection invariant

Invariant: At each step there is a minimal spanning tree that contains all selected and none of the rejected edges.

If both rules satisfy the invariant, then the algorithm is correct. Induction:

- At beginning: $U = E, R = A = \emptyset$. Invariant obviously holds.
- Invariant is preserved at each step of the algorithm.
- At the end: $U = \emptyset, R \cup A = E \Rightarrow (V, A)$ is a spanning tree.

Proof of the theorem: show that both rules preserve the invariant.

797

Selection rule preserves the invariant

At each step there is a minimal spanning tree T that contains all selected and none of the rejected edges.

Choose a cut that is not crossed by a selected edge. Of all undecided edges that cross the cut, select the edge e with minimal weight.

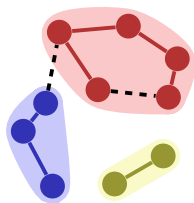
- Case 1: $e \in T$ (done)
- Case 2: $e \notin T$. Then $T \cup \{e\}$ contains a cycle that contains e . Cycle must have a second edge e' that also crosses the cut.⁴³ Because $e' \notin T$, $e' \in U$. Thus $c(e) \leq c(e')$ and $T' = T \setminus \{e'\} \cup \{e\}$ is also a minimal spanning tree (and $c(e) = c(e')$).

⁴³Such a cycle contains at least one node in S and one node in $V \setminus S$ and therefore at least one edge between S and $V \setminus S$.

798

Implementation Issues

Consider a set of sets $i \equiv A_i \subset V$. To identify cuts and cycles: membership of the both ends of an edge to sets?



800

Rejection rule preserves the invariant

At each step there is a minimal spanning tree T that contains all selected and none of the rejected edges.

Choose a cycle without rejected edges. Of all undecided edges of the cycle, reject an edge e with maximal weight.

- Case 1: $e \notin T$ (done)
- Case 2: $e \in T$. Remove e from T . This yields a cut. This cut must be crossed by another edge e' of the cycle. Because $c(e') \leq c(e)$, $T' = T \setminus \{e\} \cup \{e'\}$ is also minimal (and $c(e) = c(e')$).

799

Implementation Issues

General problem: partition (set of subsets) .e.g.

$\{\{1, 2, 3, 9\}, \{7, 6, 4\}, \{5, 8\}, \{10\}\}$

Required: Abstract data type “Union-Find” with the following operations

- Make-Set(i): create a new set represented by i .
- Find(e): name of the set i that contains e .
- Union(i, j): union of the sets with names i and j .

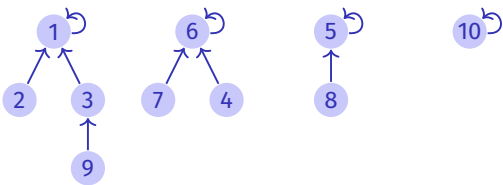
801

Union-Find Algorithm MST-Kruskal(*G*)

```
Input: Weighted Graph  $G = (V, E, c)$   
Output: Minimum spanning tree with edges  $A$ .  
Sort edges by weight  $c(e_1) \leq \dots \leq c(e_m)$   
 $A \leftarrow \emptyset$   
for  $k = 1$  to  $|V|$  do  
   $\text{MakeSet}(k)$   
for  $k = 1$  to  $m$  do  
   $(u, v) \leftarrow e_k$   
  if  $\text{Find}(u) \neq \text{Find}(v)$  then  
     $\text{Union}(\text{Find}(u), \text{Find}(v))$   
     $A \leftarrow A \cup e_k$   
  else  
    // conceptual:  $R \leftarrow R \cup e_k$   
return  $(V, A, c)$ 
```

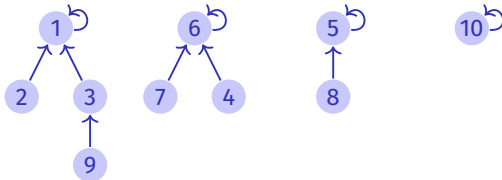
Implementation Union-Find

Idea: tree for each subset in the partition, e.g.
 $\{\{1, 2, 3, 9\}, \{7, 6, 4\}, \{5, 8\}, \{10\}\}$



roots = names (representatives) of the sets,
trees = elements of the sets

Implementation Union-Find



Representation as array:

Index	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Parent	1	1	1	6	5	6	5	5	3	10

Implementation Union-Find

Index	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Parent	1	1	1	6	5	6	5	5	3	10

Make-Set (i)	$p[i] \leftarrow i$; return i
-------------------------	---

Find (i)	while $(p[i] \neq i)$ do $i \leftarrow p[i]$ return i
---------------------	---

Union (i, j) ⁴⁴	$p[j] \leftarrow i$;
---------------------------------------	-----------------------

⁴⁴ i and j need to be names (roots) of the sets. Otherwise use $\text{Union}(\text{Find}(i), \text{Find}(j))$

Optimisation of the runtime for Find

Tree may degenerate. Example: Union(8, 7), Union(7, 6), Union(6, 5), ...

Index	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	..
Parent	1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	..

Worst-case running time of Find in $\Theta(n)$.

Observation

Theorem 28

The method above (union by size) preserves the following property of the trees: a tree of height h has at least 2^h nodes.

Immediate consequence: runtime Find = $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$.

806

Optimisation of the runtime for Find

Idea: always append smaller tree to larger tree. Requires additional size information (array) g

Make-Set(i) $p[i] \leftarrow i; g[i] \leftarrow 1; \text{return } i$

Union(i, j) **if** $g[j] > g[i]$ **then** swap(i, j)
 $p[j] \leftarrow i$
 if $g[i] = g[j]$ **then** $g[i] \leftarrow g[i] + 1$

\Rightarrow Tree depth (and worst-case running time for Find) in $\Theta(\log n)$

807

Proof

Induction: by assumption, sub-trees have at least 2^{h_i} nodes. WLOG: $h_2 \leq h_1$

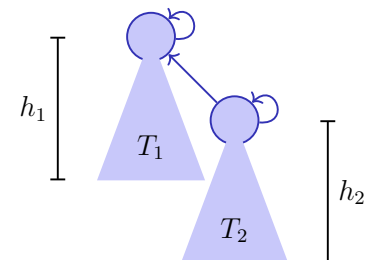
■ $h_2 < h_1$:

$$h(T_1 \oplus T_2) = h_1 \Rightarrow g(T_1 \oplus T_2) \geq 2^{h_1}$$

■ $h_2 = h_1$:

$$g(T_1) \geq g(T_2) \geq 2^{h_2}$$

$$\Rightarrow g(T_1 \oplus T_2) = g(T_1) + g(T_2) \geq 2 \cdot 2^{h_2} = 2^{h(T_1 \oplus T_2)}$$



808

809

Further improvement

Link all nodes to the root when Find is called.

Find(i):

```

 $j \leftarrow i$ 
while ( $p[j] \neq i$ ) do  $i \leftarrow p[j]$ 
while ( $j \neq i$ ) do
     $t \leftarrow j$ 
     $j \leftarrow p[j]$ 
     $p[t] \leftarrow i$ 
return  $i$ 
    
```

Cost: amortised *nearly* constant (inverse of the Ackermann-function).⁴⁵

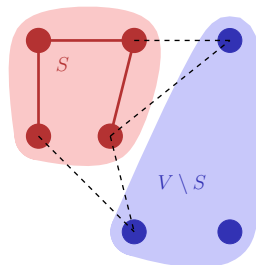
⁴⁵We do not go into details here.

Algorithm of Jarnik (1930), Prim, Dijkstra (1959)

Idea: start with some $v \in V$ and grow the spanning tree from here by the acceptance rule.

```

 $A \leftarrow \emptyset$ 
 $S \leftarrow \{v_0\}$ 
for  $i \leftarrow 1$  to  $|V|$  do
    Choose cheapest  $(u, v)$  mit  $u \in S, v \notin S$ 
     $A \leftarrow A \cup \{(u, v)\}$ 
     $S \leftarrow S \cup \{v\}$  // (Coloring)
    
```



Remark: a union-Find data structure is not required. It suffices to color nodes when they are added to S .

Running time of Kruskal's Algorithm

- Sorting of the edges: $\Theta(|E| \log |E|) = \Theta(|E| \log |V|)$.⁴⁶
 - Initialisation of the Union-Find data structure $\Theta(|V|)$
 - $|E| \times \text{Union}(\text{Find}(x), \text{Find}(y))$: $\mathcal{O}(|E| \log |E|) = \mathcal{O}(|E| \log |V|)$.
- Overall $\Theta(|E| \log |V|)$.

⁴⁶because G is connected: $|V| \leq |E| \leq |V|^2$

Implementation and Running time

Implementation like with Dijkstra's ShortestPath. Only difference:

Shortest Paths	⇒	Minimum Spanning Tree
Relax (u, v) : if $d_s[v] > d[u] + c(u, v)$ then $d_s[v] \leftarrow d_s[u] + c(u, v)$ $\pi_s[v] \leftarrow u$		Relax (u, v) : if $d_s[v] > c(u, v)$ then $d_s[v] \leftarrow c(u, v)$ $\pi_s[v] \leftarrow u$

- With Min-Heap: costs $\mathcal{O}(|E| \cdot \log |V|)$:
 - Initialization (node coloring) $\mathcal{O}(|V|)$
 - $|V| \times \text{ExtractMin} = \mathcal{O}(|V| \log |V|)$,
 - $|E| \times \text{Insert or DecreaseKey}$: $\mathcal{O}(|E| \log |V|)$,
- With a Fibonacci-Heap: $\mathcal{O}(|E| + |V| \cdot \log |V|)$.

Fibonacci Heaps

Data structure for elements with key with operations

- **MakeHeap():** Return new heap without elements
- **Insert(H, x):** Add x to H
- **Minimum(H):** return a pointer to element m with minimal key
- **ExtractMin(H):** return and remove (from H) pointer to the element m
- **Union(H_1, H_2):** return a heap merged from H_1 and H_2
- **DecreaseKey(H, x, k):** decrease the key of x in H to k
- **Delete (H, x):** remove element x from H

Advantage over binary heap?

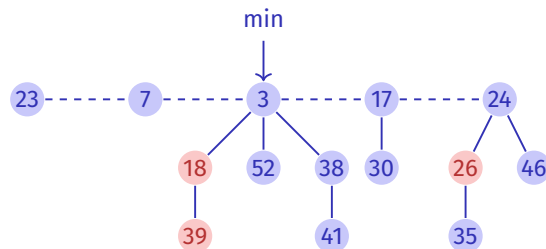
	Binary Heap (worst-Case)	Fibonacci Heap (amortized)
MakeHeap	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(1)$
Insert	$\Theta(\log n)$	$\Theta(1)$
Minimum	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(1)$
ExtractMin	$\Theta(\log n)$	$\Theta(\log n)$
Union	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(1)$
DecreaseKey	$\Theta(\log n)$	$\Theta(1)$
Delete	$\Theta(\log n)$	$\Theta(\log n)$

814

815

Structure

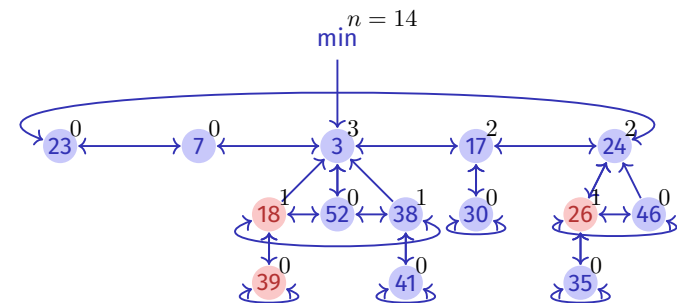
Set of trees that respect the Min-Heap property. Nodes that can be marked.



816

Implementation

Doubly linked lists of nodes with a marked-flag and number of children. Pointer to minimal Element and number nodes.



817

Simple Operations

- MakeHeap (trivial)
- Minimum (trivial)
- Insert(H, e)
 1. Insert new element into root-list
 2. If key is smaller than minimum, reset min-pointer.
- Union (H_1, H_2)
 1. Concatenate root-lists of H_1 and H_2
 2. Reset min-pointer.
- Delete(H, e)
 1. DecreaseKey($H, e, -\infty$)
 2. ExtractMin(H)

818

DecreaseKey (H, e, k)

1. Remove e from its parent node p (if existing) and decrease the degree of p by one.
2. Insert(H, e)
3. Avoid too thin trees:
 - a If $p = \text{nil}$ then done.
 - b If p is unmarked: mark p and done.
 - c If p marked: unmark p and cut p from its parent pp . Insert (H, p). Iterate with $p \leftarrow pp$.

820

ExtractMin

1. Remove minimal node m from the root list
2. Insert children of m into the root list
3. Merge heap-ordered trees with the same degrees until all trees have a different degree:
Array of degrees $a[0, \dots, n]$ of elements, empty at beginning. For each element e of the root list:
 - a Let g be the degree of e
 - b If $a[g] = \text{nil}$: $a[g] \leftarrow e$.
 - c If $e' := a[g] \neq \text{nil}$: Merge e with e' resulting in e'' and set $a[g] \leftarrow \text{nil}$. Set e'' unmarked. Re-iterate with $e \leftarrow e''$ having degree $g + 1$.

819

Estimation of the degree

Theorem 29

Let p be a node of a F-Heap H . If child nodes of p are sorted by time of insertion (Union), then it holds that the i th child node has a degree of at least $i - 2$.

Proof: p may have had more children and lost by cutting. When the i th child p_i was linked, p and p_i must at least have had degree $i - 1$. p_i may have lost at least one child (marking!), thus at least degree $i - 2$ remains.

821

Estimation of the degree

Theorem 30

Every node p with degree k of a F -Heap is the root of a subtree with at least F_{k+1} nodes. (F : Fibonacci-Folge)

Proof: Let S_k be the minimal number of successors of a node of degree k in a F -Heap plus 1 (the node itself). Clearly $S_0 = 1, S_1 = 2$. With the previous theorem $S_k \geq 2 + \sum_{i=0}^{k-2} S_i, k \geq 2$ (p and nodes p_1 each 1). For Fibonacci numbers it holds that (induction) $F_k \geq 2 + \sum_{i=2}^k F_i, k \geq 2$ and thus (also induction) $S_k \geq F_{k+2}$.

Fibonacci numbers grow exponentially fast ($\mathcal{O}(\varphi^k)$) Consequence: maximal degree of an arbitrary node in a Fibonacci-Heap with n nodes is $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$.

822

Amortized costs of ExtractMin

- Number trees in the root list $t(H)$.
- Real costs of ExtractMin operation $\mathcal{O}(\log n + t(H))$.
- When merged still $\mathcal{O}(\log n)$ nodes.
- Number of markings can only get smaller when trees are merged
- Thus maximal amortized costs of ExtractMin

$$\mathcal{O}(\log n + t(H)) + \mathcal{O}(\log n) - \mathcal{O}(t(H)) = \mathcal{O}(\log n).$$

824

Amortized worst-case analysis Fibonacci Heap

$t(H)$: number of trees in the root list of H , $m(H)$: number of marked nodes in H not within the root-list, Potential function $\Phi(H) = t(H) + 2 \cdot m(H)$. At the beginning $\Phi(H) = 0$. Potential always non-negative.

Amortized costs:

- **Insert(H, x)**: $t'(H) = t(H) + 1, m'(H) = m(H)$, Increase of the potential: 1, Amortized costs $\Theta(1) + 1 = \Theta(1)$
- **Minimum(H)**: Amortized costs = real costs = $\Theta(1)$
- **Union(H_1, H_2)**: Amortized costs = real costs = $\Theta(1)$

823

Amortized costs of DecreaseKey

- Assumption: DecreaseKey leads to c cuts of a node from its parent node, real costs $\mathcal{O}(c)$
- c nodes are added to the root list
- Delete $(c - 1)$ mark flags, addition of at most one mark flag
- Amortized costs of DecreaseKey:

$$\mathcal{O}(c) + (t(H) + c) + 2 \cdot (m(H) - c + 2) - (t(H) + 2m(H)) = \mathcal{O}(1)$$

825

27. Flow in Networks

Flow Network, Maximal Flow, Cut, Res Network, Max-flow Min-cut Theorem, Ford-Fulkerson Method, Edmonds-Karp Algorithm, Maximal Bipartite Matching [Ottman/Widmayer, Kap. 9.7, 9.8.1], [Cormen et al, Kap. 26.1-26.3]

826

Motivation

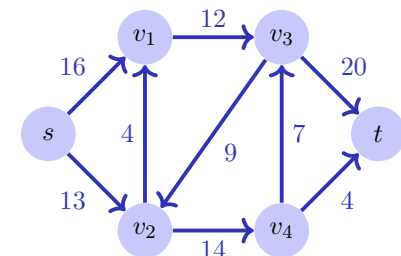
- Modelling flow of fluents, components on conveyors, current in electrical networks or information flow in communication networks.
- Connectivity of Communication Networks, Bipartite Matching, Circulation, Scheduling, Image Segmentation, Baseball Elimination...

827

27.1 Flow Network

Flow Network

- Flow network $G = (V, E, c)$: directed graph with capacities
- Antiparallel edges forbidden:
 $(u, v) \in E \Rightarrow (v, u) \notin E$.
- Model a missing edge (u, v) by $c(u, v) = 0$.
- Source s and sink t : special nodes. Every node v is on a path between s and t :
 $s \rightsquigarrow v \rightsquigarrow t$



828

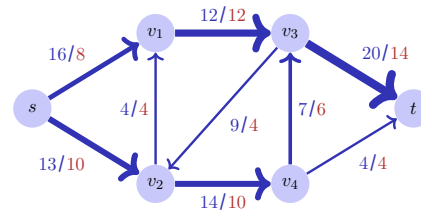
829

Flow

A Flow $f : V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ fulfills the following conditions:

- **Bounded Capacity:**
For all $u, v \in V$: $f(u, v) \leq c(u, v)$.
- **Skew Symmetry:**
For all $u, v \in V$: $f(u, v) = -f(v, u)$.
- **Conservation of flow:**
For all $u \in V \setminus \{s, t\}$:

$$\sum_{v \in V} f(u, v) = 0.$$



Value of the flow:
 $|f| = \sum_{v \in V} f(s, v)$.
 Here $|f| = 18$.

830

How large can a flow possibly be?

Limiting factors: cuts

- cut separating s from t : Partition of V into S and T with $s \in S, t \in T$.
- Capacity of a cut: $c(S, T) = \sum_{v \in S, v' \in T} c(v, v')$
- Minimal cut: cut with minimal capacity.
- Flow over the cut: $f(S, T) = \sum_{v \in S, v' \in T} f(v, v')$

831

Implicit Summation

Notation: Let $U, U' \subseteq V$

$$f(U, U') := \sum_{\substack{u \in U \\ u' \in U'}} f(u, u'), \quad f(u, U') := f(\{u\}, U')$$

Thus

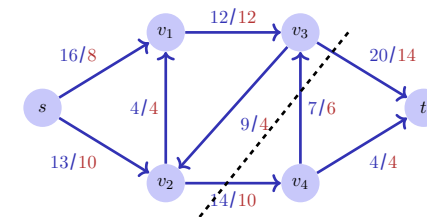
- $|f| = f(s, V)$
- $f(U, U) = 0$
- $f(U, U') = -f(U', U)$
- $f(X \cup Y, Z) = f(X, Z) + f(Y, Z)$, if $X \cap Y = \emptyset$.
- $f(R, V) = 0$ if $R \cap \{s, t\} = \emptyset$. [flow conversation!]

832

How large can a flow possibly be?

For each flow and each cut it holds that $f(S, T) = |f|$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(S, T) &= f(S, V) - \underbrace{f(S, S)}_0 = f(S, V) \\ &= f(s, V) + \underbrace{f(S - \{s\}, V)}_{\not\ni t, \not\ni s} = |f|. \end{aligned}$$



833

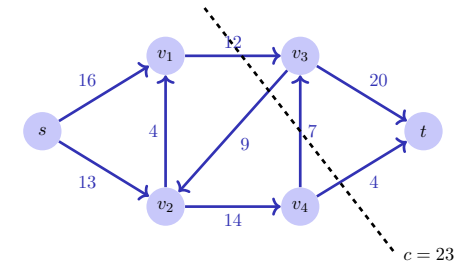
27.3 Maximal Flow

Maximal Flow ?

In particular, for each cut (S, T) of V .

$$|f| \leq \sum_{v \in S, v' \in T} c(v, v') = c(S, T)$$

Will discover that equality holds for $\min_{S, T} c(S, T)$.

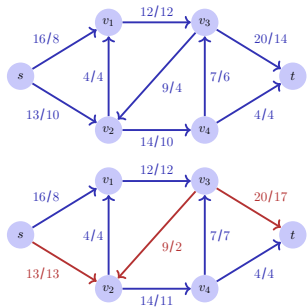


834

835

Maximal Flow ?

Naive Procedure



Conclusion: greedy increase of flow does not solve the problem.

The Method of Ford-Fulkerson

- Start with $f(u, v) = 0$ for all $u, v \in V$
- Determine rest network* G_f and expansion path in G_f
- Increase flow via expansion path*
- Repeat until no expansion path available.

$$G_f := (V, E_f, c_f)$$

$$c_f(u, v) := c(u, v) - f(u, v) \quad \forall u, v \in V$$

$$E_f := \{(u, v) \in V \times V \mid c_f(u, v) > 0\}$$

*Will now be explained

836

837

Increase of flow, negative!

Let some flow f in the network be given.

Finding:

- Increase of the flow along some edge possible, when flow can be increased along the edge, i.e. if $f(u, v) < c(u, v)$.
Rest capacity $c_f(u, v) = c(u, v) - f(u, v) > 0$.
- Increase of flow against the direction of the edge possible, if flow can be reduced along the edge, i.e. if $f(u, v) > 0$.
Rest capacity $c_f(v, u) = f(u, v) > 0$.

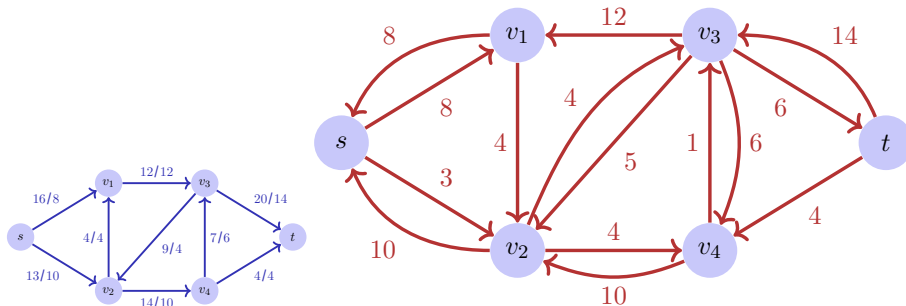
27.4 Rest Network

838

839

Rest Network

Rest network G_f provided by the edges with positive rest capacity:



Rest networks provide the same kind of properties as flow networks with the exception of permitting antiparallel capacity-edges

840

Observation

Theorem 31

Let $G = (V, E, c)$ be a flow network with source s and sink t and f a flow in G . Let G_f be the corresponding rest networks and let f' be a flow in G_f . Then $f \oplus f'$ with

$$(f \oplus f')(u, v) = f(u, v) + f'(u, v)$$

defines a flow in G with value $|f| + |f'|$.

841

Proof

$f \oplus f'$ defines a flow in G :

■ capacity limit

$$(f \oplus f')(u, v) = f(u, v) + \underbrace{f'(u, v)}_{\leq c(u, v) - f(u, v)} \leq c(u, v)$$

■ skew symmetry

$$(f \oplus f')(u, v) = -f(v, u) + -f'(v, u) = -(f \oplus f')(v, u)$$

■ flow conservation $u \in V - \{s, t\}$:

$$\sum_{v \in V} (f \oplus f')(u, v) = \sum_{v \in V} f(u, v) + \sum_{v \in V} f'(u, v) = 0$$

842

Augmenting Paths

expansion path p : simple path from s to t in the rest network G_f .

Rest capacity $c_f(p) = \min\{c_f(u, v) : (u, v) \text{ edge in } p\}$

Proof

Value of $f \oplus f'$

$$\begin{aligned} |f \oplus f'| &= (f \oplus f')(s, V) \\ &= \sum_{u \in V} f(s, u) + f'(s, u) \\ &= f(s, V) + f'(s, V) \\ &= |f| + |f'| \end{aligned}$$

■

843

Flow in G_f

Theorem 32

The mapping $f_p : V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$,

$$f_p(u, v) = \begin{cases} c_f(p) & \text{if } (u, v) \text{ edge in } p \\ -c_f(p) & \text{if } (v, u) \text{ edge in } p \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

provides a flow in G_f with value $|f_p| = c_f(p) > 0$.

f_p is a flow (easy to show). there is one and only one $u \in V$ with $(s, u) \in p$. Thus $|f_p| = \sum_{v \in V} f_p(s, v) = f_p(s, u) = c_f(p)$.

844

845

Consequence

Strategy for an algorithm:

With an expansion path p in G_f the flow $f \oplus f_p$ defines a new flow with value $|f \oplus f_p| = |f| + |f_p| > |f|$.

846

Max-Flow Min-Cut Theorem

Theorem 33

Let f be a flow in a flow network $G = (V, E, c)$ with source s and sink t . The following statements are equivalent:

1. f is a maximal flow in G
2. The rest network G_f does not provide any expansion paths
3. It holds that $|f| = c(S, T)$ for a cut (S, T) of G .

848

27.5 Max-Flow Min-Cut

847

Proof

- (3) \Rightarrow (1):
It holds that $|f| \leq c(S, T)$ for all cuts S, T . From $|f| = c(S, T)$ it follows that $|f|$ is maximal.
- (1) \Rightarrow (2):
 f maximal Flow in G . Assumption: G_f has some expansion path $|f \oplus f_p| = |f| + |f_p| > |f|$. Contradiction.

849

Proof (2) \Rightarrow (3)

Assumption: G_f has no expansion path

Define $S = \{v \in V : \text{there is a path } s \rightsquigarrow v \text{ in } G_f\}$.

$(S, T) := (S, V \setminus S)$ **is a cut:** $s \in S, t \in T$.

Let $u \in S$ **and** $v \in T$. **Then** $c_f(u, v) = 0$, **also** $c_f(u, v) = c(u, v) - f(u, v) = 0$.

Somit $f(u, v) = c(u, v)$.

Thus

$$|f| = f(S, T) = \sum_{u \in S} \sum_{v \in T} f(u, v) = \sum_{u \in S} \sum_{v \in T} c(u, v) = C(S, T).$$

■

850

27.6 Ford-Fulkerson Algorithm

851

Algorithm Ford-Fulkerson(G, s, t)

Input: Flow network $G = (V, E, c)$

Output: Maximal flow f .

for $(u, v) \in E$ **do**

$f(u, v) \leftarrow 0$

while Exists path $p : s \rightsquigarrow t$ in rest network G_f **do**

$c_f(p) \leftarrow \min\{c_f(u, v) : (u, v) \in p\}$

foreach $(u, v) \in p$ **do**

$f(u, v) \leftarrow f(u, v) + c_f(p)$

$f(v, u) \leftarrow f(v, u) - c_f(p)$

Practical Consideration

In an implementation of the Ford-Fulkerson algorithm the negative flow edges are usually not stored because their value always equals the negated value of the antiparallel edge.

$f(u, v) \leftarrow f(u, v) + c_f(p)$

$f(v, u) \leftarrow f(v, u) - c_f(p)$

is then transformed to

if $(u, v) \in E$ **then**

$f(u, v) \leftarrow f(u, v) + c_f(p)$

else

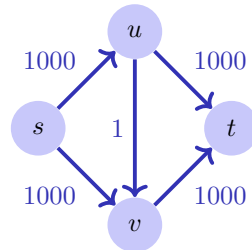
$f(v, u) \leftarrow f(v, u) - c_f(p)$

852

853

Analysis

- The Ford-Fulkerson algorithm does not necessarily have to converge for irrational capacities. For integers or rational numbers it terminates.
- For an integer flow, the algorithm requires maximally $|f_{\max}|$ iterations of the while loop (because the flow increases minimally by 1). Search a single increasing path (e.g. with DFS or BFS) $\mathcal{O}(|E|)$. Therefore $\mathcal{O}(f_{\max}|E|)$.



With an unlucky choice the algorithm may require up to 2000 iterations here.

854

27.7 Edmonds-Karp Algorithm

855

Edmonds-Karp Algorithm

Choose in the Ford-Fulkerson-Method for finding a path in G_f the expansion path of shortest possible length (e.g. with BFS)

Edmonds-Karp Algorithm

Theorem 34

When the Edmonds-Karp algorithm is applied to some integer valued flow network $G = (V, E)$ with source s and sink t then the number of flow increases applied by the algorithm is in $\mathcal{O}(|V| \cdot |E|)$.

\Rightarrow Overall asymptotic runtime: $\mathcal{O}(|V| \cdot |E|^2)$

[Without proof]

856

857

27.8 Maximal Bipartite Matching

Application: maximal bipartite matching

Given: bipartite undirected graph $G = (V, E)$.

Matching M : $M \subseteq E$ such that $|\{m \in M : v \in m\}| \leq 1$ for all $v \in V$.

Maximal Matching M : Matching M , such that $|M| \geq |M'|$ for each matching M' .

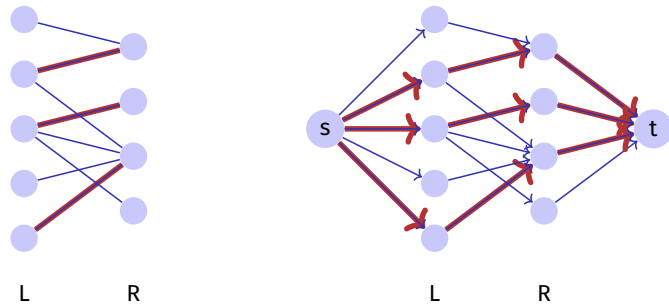


858

859

Corresponding flow network

Construct a flow network that corresponds to the partition L, R of a bipartite graph with source s and sink t , with directed edges from s to L , from L to R and from R to t . Each edge has capacity 1.



860

Integer number theorem

Theorem 35

If the capacities of a flow network are integers, then the maximal flow generated by the Ford-Fulkerson method provides integer numbers for each $f(u, v)$, $u, v \in V$.

[without proof]

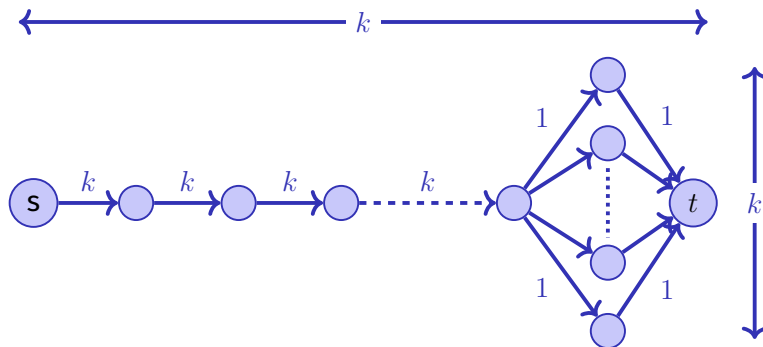
Consequence: Ford-Fulkerson generates for a flow network that corresponds to a bipartite graph a maximal matching

$M = \{(u, v) : f(u, v) = 1\}$.

861

27.9 Push-Relabel Algorithm

Beispiel



Here, the Ford-Fulkerson algorithm (and Edmonds-Karp) executes $\Omega(k^2)$ steps.

Disclaimer

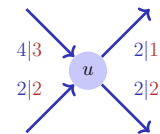
The following slides contain the most important formalities around the Push-Relabel algorithm and its correctness. One example is still missing. We motivate the algorithm in the lectures and give more examples there. The conception of this lecture taken from Tim Roughgarden (Stanford)
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0hI89H39USg>

Pre-Flow

A pre-flow $f : V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a flow with a relaxed flow conservation condition:

- **Bounded Capacity:**
For all $u, v \in V$: $f(u, v) \leq c(u, v)$.
- **Skew Symmetry:**
For all $u, v \in V$: $f(u, v) = -f(v, u)$.
- **Relaxed flow condition:**
For all $u \in V \setminus \{s, t\}$:

$$\alpha_f(u) := \sum_{v \in V} f(v, u) \geq 0.$$



node with excess
 $\alpha_f(u) = 3 + 2 - 1 - 2 = 2$.

The quantity $\alpha_f(u)$ is called excess of f at u

Algorithmus Push(u, v)

The residual network G_f remains defined for a pre-flow as before for a flow.

```
if  $\alpha_f(u) > 0$  then
  if  $c_f(u, v) > 0$  in  $G_f$  then
     $\Delta \leftarrow \min\{c_f(u, v), \alpha_f(u)\}$ 
     $f(u, v) \leftarrow f(u, v) + \Delta$ .
```

Height Function

A height function $h: V \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_0$ on G will make sure that the flow is not pushed infinitely often in circles. Moreover, the following invariants make sure that s keeps being disconnected from t in the residual network.

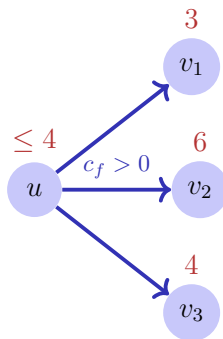
Invariants of the height function

1. $h(s) = n$
2. $h(t) = 0$
3. for each $u, v \in V$ with $c_f(u, v) > 0$ it holds that $h(u) \leq h(v) + 1$.

866

867

Beispiel



Edges in the residual network go at most down by one (or stay on the same height or go up)

No Augmenting Path

The length of a path from s to t in the residual network is at most $n - 1$. Because for each edge (u, v) with $c_f(u, v) > 0$ it holds that $h(v) \geq h(u) - 1$ and since $h(s) = n$ and $h(t) = 0$ (thus a path from height n to height 0 requires at least n steps), no augmenting path exists when the invariants are preserved.

868

869

Strategies

Ford-Fulkerson (conservative)

- Invariant: flow conservation
- Steps: augmenting paths
- Goal: separate s from t in the residual network.

Push-Relabel

- Invariant: height invariant (no augmenting path!)
- Steps: push flow
- Goal: achieve flow conservation

870

Correctness: Invariants Lemma

Lemma 36

During the execution of the Push-Relabel algorithm, the invariants for the height functions are preserved

Immediate conclusion: when the Push-Relabel algorithm terminates, it terminates with a max-flow.

872

Push-Relabel-Algorithmus

Input: Flow graph $G = (V, E, c)$, with source s and sink t $n := |V|$

$h(s) \leftarrow n$

foreach $v \neq s$ **do** $h(v) \leftarrow 0$

foreach $(u, v) \in E$ **do** $f(u, v) \leftarrow 0$

foreach $(s, v) \in E$ **do** $f(s, v) \leftarrow c(s, v)$

while $\exists u \in V \setminus \{s, t\} : \alpha_f(u) > 0$ **do**

 choose u with $\alpha_f(u) > 0$ and maximal $h(u)$

if $\exists v \in V : c_f(u, v) > 0 \wedge h(v) = h(u) - 1$ **then**

 push(u, v)

// push

else

$h(u) \leftarrow h(u) + 1$

// relabel

871

Invariants-Lemma: Proof

Proof:

After initialization, the invariants are fulfilled because only for edges (s, u) the height difference less than -1 , but there we have $c_f(s, u) = 0$. Invariants on s and t are preserved because the height of s and t is never changed.

Execution of push(u, v) can at most yield a new edge (v, u) in the residual network with $h(v) > h(u)$

Execution of relabel takes place only when there is no downward edge. Thus after a relabel it holds that $h(u) \geq h(v) - 1$ for all edges (u, v)

■

873

Termination and Running Time

Theorem 37

The Push-Relabel algorithm terminates after

- $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ relabel operations, and
- $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$ push operations.

The proof is conducted in the following separately for relabel and push.

874

Key Lemma: Proof

Proof: Let $A := \{u \in V : \exists p : s \rightsquigarrow u \text{ mit } f(e) > 0 \forall e \in p\}$ and $B := V \setminus A$. For each $u \in A$ there is a path from s with positive flow. Therefore in the residual network there is a path from u to s .

Let $u \in B$. Then $\sum_{v \in V} f(v, u) \geq 0$, because f is a pre-flow.

But also $\sum_{v \in V} \sum_{u \in B} f(v, u) = \underbrace{\sum_{v \in A} \sum_{u \in B} f(v, u)}_{\leq 0} + \underbrace{\sum_{v \in B} \sum_{u \in B} f(v, u)}_{=0} \leq 0$ because

there cannot be an edge with positive weight from A to B and for each edge within B it holds that $f(u, v) = -f(v, u) \Rightarrow \alpha_f(u) = 0 \forall u \in B$. Thus $\alpha_f(u) > 0$ implies that $u \in A$. ■

876

Key Lemma

Lemma 38

Let f be a pre-flow in G . If $\alpha_f(u) > 0$ holds for some node $u \in V - \{s, t\}$, then there is some path $p : u \rightsquigarrow s$ in the residual network G_f .

875

Maximum Node Height

Corollary 39

During the execution of the Push-Relabel algorithm it holds that $h(u) < 2n$ for all $u \in V$.

Proof:

Mainlemma: for each node t with $\alpha_f(u) > 0$ there is a path $p : u \rightsquigarrow s$ in residual network

Height invariants: edges in G_f go down by at most one step. , $h(s) = n$.

Maximal length of $p : u \rightsquigarrow s$ (no cycles!) is $n - 1$. \Rightarrow Maximum height of node is $n + n - 1 = 2n - 1$. ■

877

Number Relabels

From the previous corollary immediately follows

Corollary 40

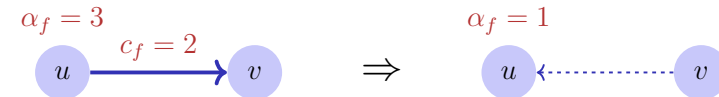
The Push-Relabel algorithm executes $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ relabel operations.

878

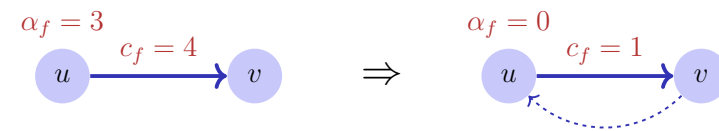
(Non-)Saturating Pushes

$\text{push}(u, v)$ is called

- **saturating**, if $c_f(u, v) \leq \alpha_f(u)$



- **non-saturating**, if $c_f(u, v) > \alpha_f(u)$



879

Number Saturating Pushes

Lemma 41

Between two non-saturating pushes on the same edge (u, v) , the Push-Relabel algorithm executes at least two relabel operations.

Immediate conclusion: there are $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$ saturating push operations overall because for each node by corollary 39 there are at $\mathcal{O}(n)$ relabels.

880

Proof: Number Saturating Pushes

Proof:

After a saturating $\text{push}(u, v)$ (with $h(u) = h(v) + 1$) edge (u, v) disappears from the residual network.

In order to (u, v) to reappear on the residual network, $\text{push}(v, u)$ (reverse edge) has to be executed. But before it must hold that $h(v) = h(u) + 1$ therefore to relabels of v are required.

Two more relabels are required on u before a call to $\text{push}(u, v)$

■

881

Number Non-Saturating pushes

Lemma 42

Between two relabel-operations, the Push-Relabel algorithm executes at most n non-saturating pushes.

Immediate conclusion: there are $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$ non-saturating push operations overall because by corollary 40 there are $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ relabel operations.

882

Proof: Number Non-saturating pushes

Proof:

Let $A_f := \{v \in V : \alpha_f(v) > 0\}$

Choice of u for push: $u \in A_f$ with $h(u) \geq h(v)$ for all $v \in A_f$.

During a non-saturating push u disappears from A_f . During this push and following pushes only $v \in A_f$ with $h(v) < h(u)$ are added to A_f . Before a new relabel has been executed, it holds thus that $u \notin A_f$.

Because this argument holds for all chosen u , until the next relabel operation at most n non-saturating pushes can be executed. ■

883

28. Parallel Programming I

Moore's Law and the Free Lunch, Hardware Architectures, Parallel Execution, Multi-Threading, Parallelism and Concurrency, C++ Threads, Scalability: Amdahl and Gustafson, Data-parallelism, Task-parallelism, Scheduling

[Task-Scheduling: Cormen et al, Kap. 27] [Concurrency, Scheduling: Williams, Kap. 1.1 – 1.2]

The Free Lunch

The free lunch is over ⁴⁷

⁴⁷"The Free Lunch is Over", a fundamental turn toward concurrency in software, Herb Sutter, Dr. Dobbs's Journal, 2005

884

885

Moore's Law

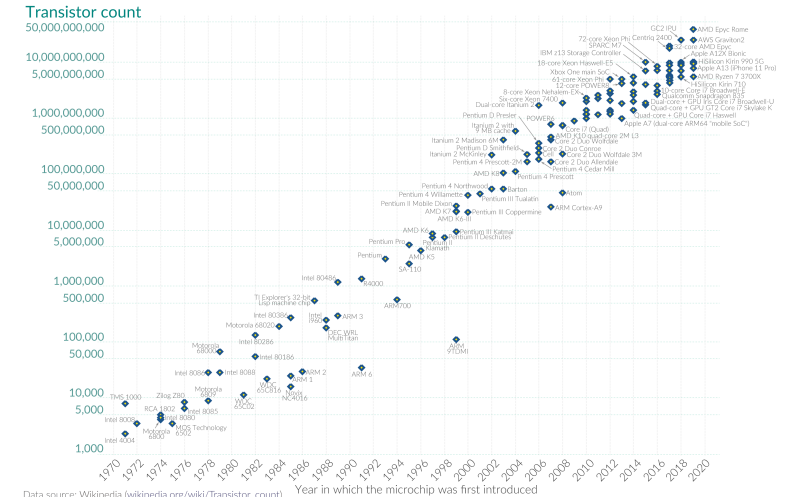
Observation by Gordon E. Moore:
The number of transistors on integrated circuits doubles approximately every two years.



Gordon E. Moore (1929)

Moore's Law: The number of transistors on microchips doubles every two years

Moore's law describes the empirical regularity that the number of transistors on integrated circuits doubles approximately every two years. This advancement is important for other aspects of technological progress in computing – such as processing speed or the price of computers.

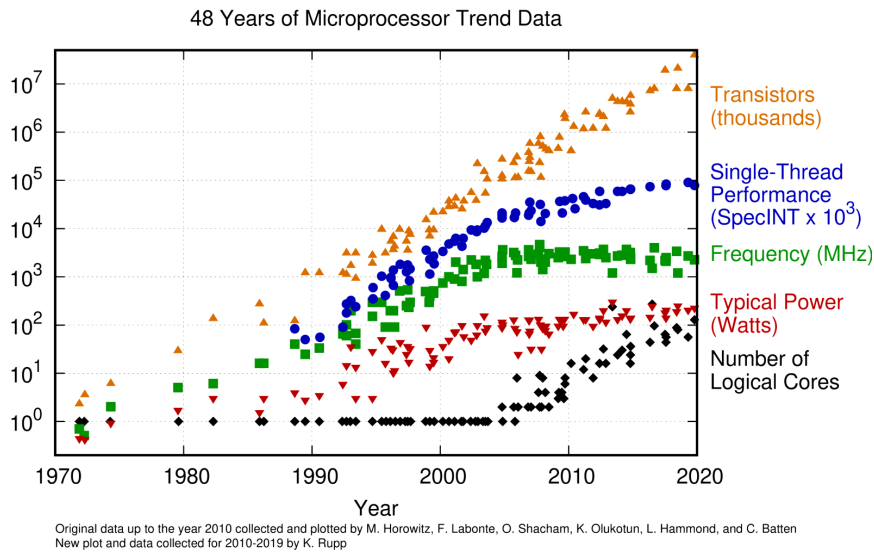


For a long time...

- the sequential execution became faster ("Instruction Level Parallelism", "Pipelining", Higher Frequencies)
- more and smaller transistors = more performance
- programmers simply waited for the next processor generation

Today

- the frequency of processors does not increase significantly and more (heat dissipation problems)
- the instruction level parallelism does not increase significantly any more
- the execution speed is dominated by memory access times (but caches still become larger and faster)



890

<https://github.com/karlrupp/microprocessor-trend-data>

Multicore

- Use transistors for more compute cores
- Parallelism in the software
- Programmers have to write parallel programs to benefit from new hardware

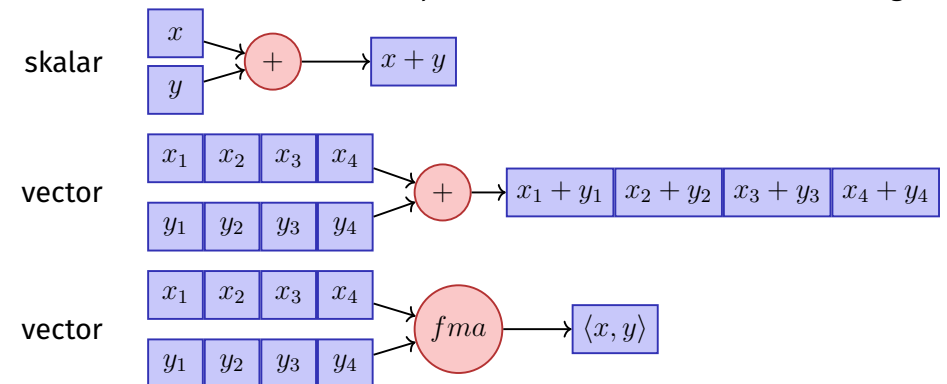
891

Forms of Parallel Execution

- Vectorization
- Pipelining
- Instruction Level Parallelism
- Multicore / Multiprocessing
- Distributed Computing

Vectorization

Parallel Execution of the same operations on elements of a vector (register)



892

893

Pipelining in CPUs



Multiple Stages

- Every instruction takes 5 time units (cycles)
- In the best case: 1 instruction per cycle, not always possible (“stalls”)

Parallelism (several functional units) leads to **faster execution**.

894

ILP – Instruction Level Parallelism

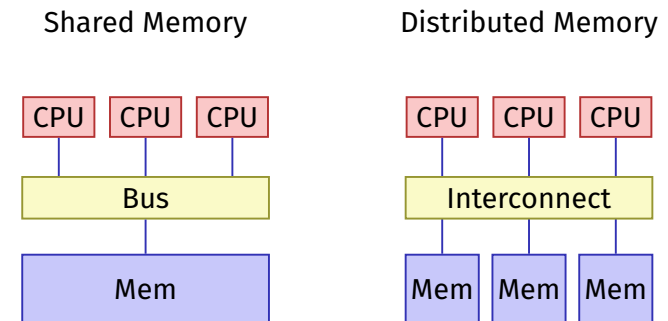
Modern CPUs provide several hardware units and execute independent instructions in parallel.

- Pipelining
- Superscalar CPUs (multiple instructions per cycle)
- Out-Of-Order Execution (Programmer observes the sequential execution)
- Speculative Execution (Instructions are executed speculatively and rolled back when the condition that led to their execution is not fulfilled.)

895

28.2 Hardware Architectures

Shared vs. Distributed Memory



896

897

Shared Memory Architectures

- Multicore (Chip Multiprocessor - CMP)
- Symmetric Multiprocessor Systems (SMP)
- Non-Uniform Memory Access (NUMA)
- Simultaneous Multithreading (SMT = Hyperthreading)
 - one physical core, Several Instruction Streams/Threads: several virtual cores
 - Between ILP (several units for a stream) and multicore (several units for several streams). Limited parallel performance.

Same programming interface

898

Shared vs. Distributed Memory Programming

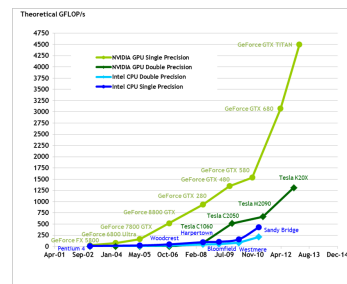
- Categories of programming interfaces
 - Communication via message passing
 - Communication via memory sharing
- It is possible:
 - to program shared memory systems as distributed systems (e.g. with message passing MPI)
 - program systems with distributed memory as shared memory systems (e.g. partitioned global address space PGAS)

899

Massively Parallel Hardware

[General Purpose] Graphical Processing Units
([GP]GPUs)

- Revolution in High Performance Computing
 - Calculation 4.5 TFlops vs. 500 GFlops
 - Memory Bandwidth 170 GB/s vs. 40 GB/s
- Single Instruction Multiple Data (SIMD)
 - High data parallelism
 - Requires own programming model. Z.B. CUDA / OpenCL



900

28.3 Multi-Threading, Parallelism and Concurrency

901

Processes and Threads

■ Process: instance of a program

- each process has a separate context, even a separate address space
- OS manages processes (resource control, scheduling, synchronisation)

■ Threads: threads of execution of a program

- Threads share the address space
- fast context switch between threads

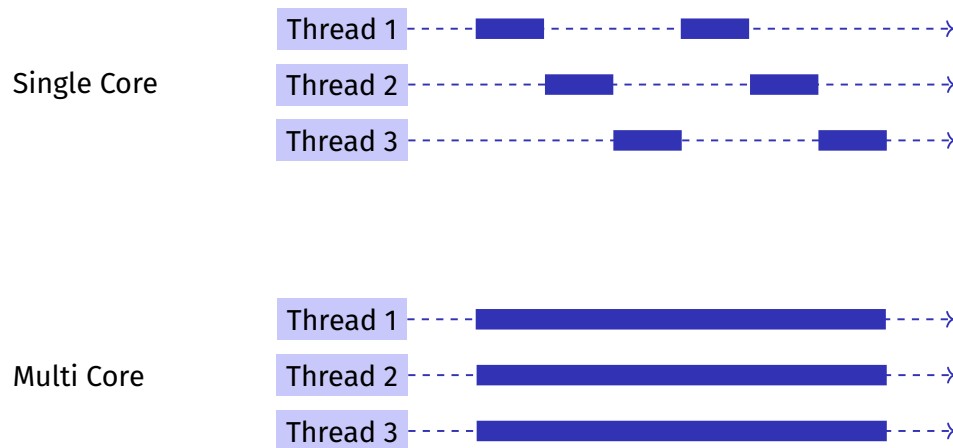
902

Why Multithreading?

- Avoid “polling” resources (files, network, keyboard)
- Interactivity (e.g. responsivity of GUI programs)
- Several applications / clients in parallel
- Parallelism (performance!)

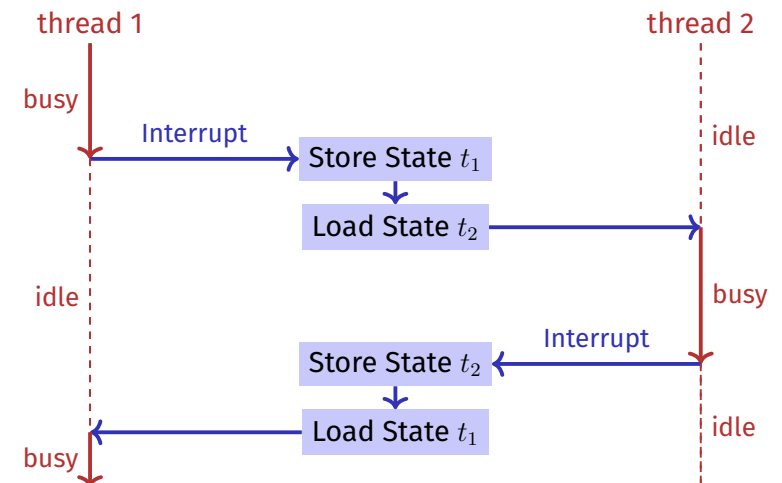
903

Multithreading conceptually



904

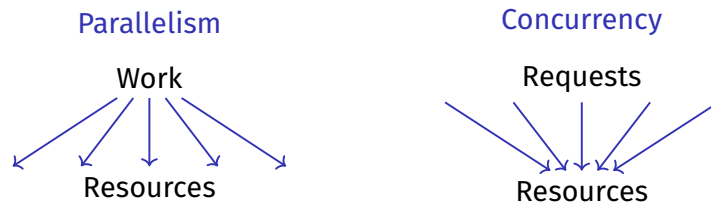
Thread switch on one core (Preemption)



905

Parallelism vs. Concurrency

- **Parallelism:** Use extra resources to solve a problem faster
- **Concurrency:** Correctly and efficiently manage access to shared resources
- The notions overlap. With parallel computations there is nearly always a need to synchronise.



906

Thread Safety

Thread Safety means that in a concurrent application of a program this always yields the desired results.

Many optimisations (Hardware, Compiler) target towards the correct execution of a *sequential* program.

Concurrent programs need an annotation that switches off certain optimisations selectively.

907

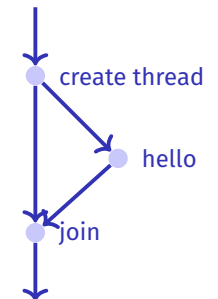
28.4 C++ Threads

C++11 Threads

```
#include <iostream>
#include <thread>

void hello(){
    std::cout << "hello\n";
}

int main(){
    // create and launch thread t
    std::thread t(hello);
    // wait for termination of t
    t.join();
    return 0;
}
```



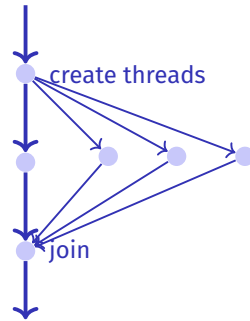
908

909

C++11 Threads

```
void hello(int id){
    std::cout << "hello from " << id << "\n";
}

int main(){
    std::vector<std::thread> tv(3);
    int id = 0;
    for (auto & t:tv)
        t = std::thread(hello, ++id);
    std::cout << "hello from main \n";
    for (auto & t:tv)
        t.join();
    return 0;
}
```



Nondeterministic Execution!

One execution:

hello from main
hello from 2
hello from 1
hello from 0

Other execution:

hello from 1
hello from main
hello from 0
hello from 2

Other execution:

hello from main
hello from 0
hello from hello from 1
2

910

911

Technical Detail

To let a thread continue as background thread:

```
void background();

void someFunction(){
    ...
    std::thread t(background);
    t.detach();
    ...
} // no problem here, thread is detached
```

More Technical Details

- With allocating a thread, reference parameters are copied, except explicitly `std::ref` is provided at the construction.
- Can also run Functor or Lambda-Expression on a thread
- In exceptional circumstances, joining threads should be executed in a catch block

More background and details in chapter 2 of the book *C++ Concurrency in Action*, Anthony Williams, Manning 2012. also available online at the ETH library.

912

913

Parallel Programming Paradigms

28.5 Task- and Data-Parallelism

Work partitioning: split work of a single program into **parallel tasks**

- **Task / Thread Parallel:** Programmer manually / explicitly defines parallel tasks.
- **Data Parallel:** Operations applied simultaneously to an aggregate of individual items. The programmer expresses the operation and the system does the rest

914

Example Data Parallel (OMP)

```
double sum = 0, A[MAX];
#pragma omp parallel for reduction (+:ave)
for (int i = 0; i < MAX; ++i)
    sum += A[i];
return sum;
```

916

Example Task Parallel (C++11 Threads/Futures)

```
double sum(Iterator from, Iterator to)
{
    auto len = from - to;
    if (len > threshold){
        auto future = std::async(sum, from, from + len / 2);
        return sumS(from + len / 2, to) + future.get();
    }
    else
        return sumS(from, to);
}
```

915

917

Work Partitioning and Scheduling

- Partitioning of the work into parallel task (programmer or system)

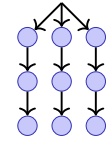
- One task provides a unit of work
- Granularity?

- Scheduling (Runtime System)

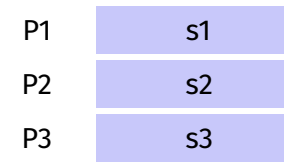
- Assignment of tasks to processors
- Goal: full resource usage with little overhead

Granularity: how many tasks?

- #Tasks = #Cores?
- Problem if a core cannot be fully used
- Example: 9 units of work. 3 core. Scheduling of 3 sequential tasks.

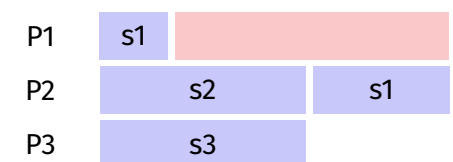


Exclusive utilization:



Execution Time: 3 Units

Foreign thread disturbing:



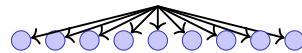
Execution Time: 5 Units

918

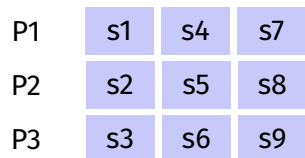
919

Granularity: how many tasks?

- #Tasks = Maximum?
- Example: 9 units of work. 3 cores. Scheduling of 9 sequential tasks.

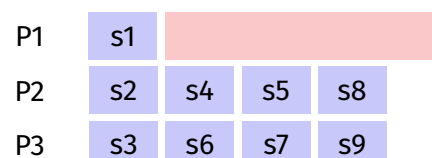


Exclusive utilization:



Execution Time: $3 + \epsilon$ Units

Foreign thread disturbing:

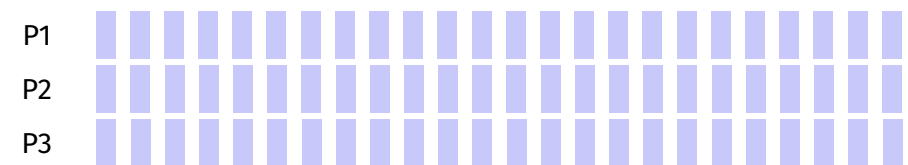


Execution Time: 4 Units. Full utilization.

920

Granularity: how many tasks?

- #Tasks = Maximum?
- Example: 10^6 tiny units of work.



Execution time: dominiert vom Overhead.

921

Granularity: how many tasks?

Answer: as many tasks as possible with a sequential cutoff such that the overhead can be neglected.

28.6 Scalability: Amdahl and Gustafson

922

Scalability

In parallel Programming:

- Speedup when increasing number p of processors
- What happens if $p \rightarrow \infty$?
- Program scales linearly: Linear speedup.

924

923

Parallel Performance

Given a fixed amount of computing work W (number computing steps)

T_1 : Sequential execution time

T_p : Parallel execution time on p CPUs

- Perfection: $T_p = T_1/p$
- Performance loss: $T_p > T_1/p$ (usual case)
- Sorcery: $T_p < T_1/p$

925

Parallel Speedup

Parallel speedup S_p on p CPUs:

$$S_p = \frac{W/T_p}{W/T_1} = \frac{T_1}{T_p}.$$

- Perfection: linear speedup $S_p = p$
- Performance loss: sublinear speedup $S_p < p$ (the usual case)
- Sorcery: superlinear speedup $S_p > p$

Efficiency: $E_p = S_p/p$

926

Amdahl's Law: Ingredients

Computational work W falls into two categories

- Parallellisable part W_p
- Not parallellisable, sequential part W_s

Assumption: W can be processed sequentially by **one** processor in W time units ($T_1 = W$):

$$T_1 = W_s + W_p$$

$$T_p \geq W_s + W_p/p$$

928

Reachable Speedup?

Parallel Program

Parallel Part	Seq. Part
80%	20%

$$T_1 = 10$$

$$T_8 = \frac{10 \cdot 0.8}{8} + 10 \cdot 0.2 = 1 + 2 = 3$$

$$S_8 = \frac{T_1}{T_8} = \frac{10}{3} \approx 3.3 < 8 \quad (!)$$

927

Amdahl's Law

$$S_p = \frac{T_1}{T_p} \leq \frac{W_s + W_p}{W_s + \frac{W_p}{p}}$$

929

Amdahl's Law

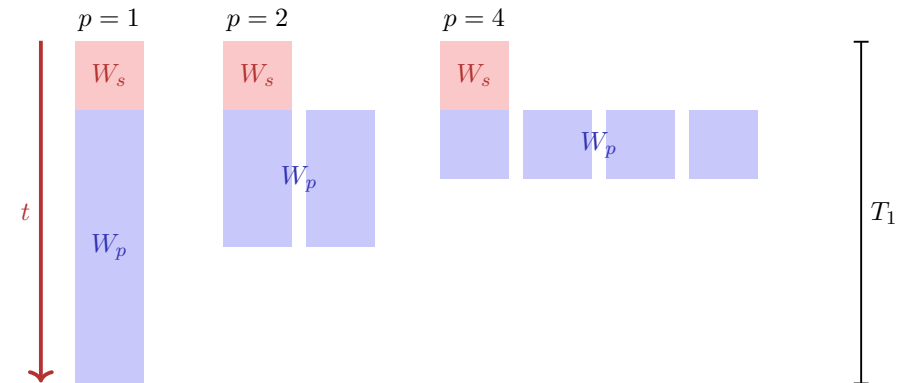
With sequential, not parallelizable fraction λ : $W_s = \lambda W$, $W_p = (1 - \lambda)W$:

$$S_p \leq \frac{1}{\lambda + \frac{1-\lambda}{p}}$$

Thus

$$S_\infty \leq \frac{1}{\lambda}$$

Illustration Amdahl's Law



930

931

Amdahl's Law is bad news

All non-parallel parts of a program can cause problems

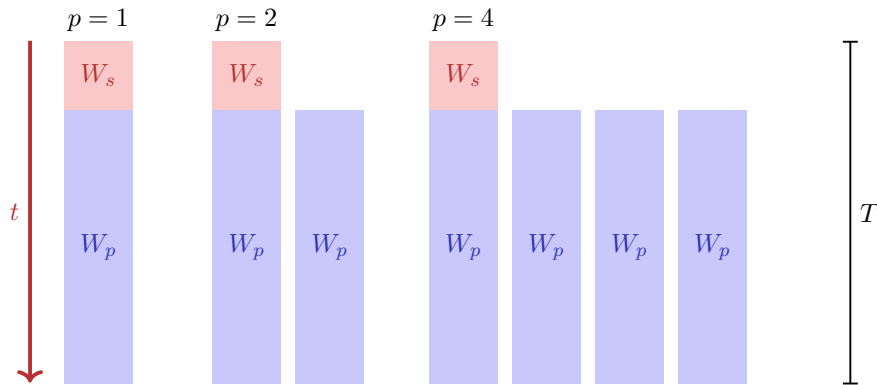
Gustafson's Law

- Fix the time of execution
- Vary the problem size.
- Assumption: the sequential part stays constant, the parallel part becomes larger

932

933

Illustration Gustafson's Law



934

Gustafson's Law

Work that can be executed by one processor in time T :

$$W_s + W_p = T$$

Work that can be executed by p processors in time T :

$$W_s + p \cdot W_p = \lambda \cdot T + p \cdot (1 - \lambda) \cdot T$$

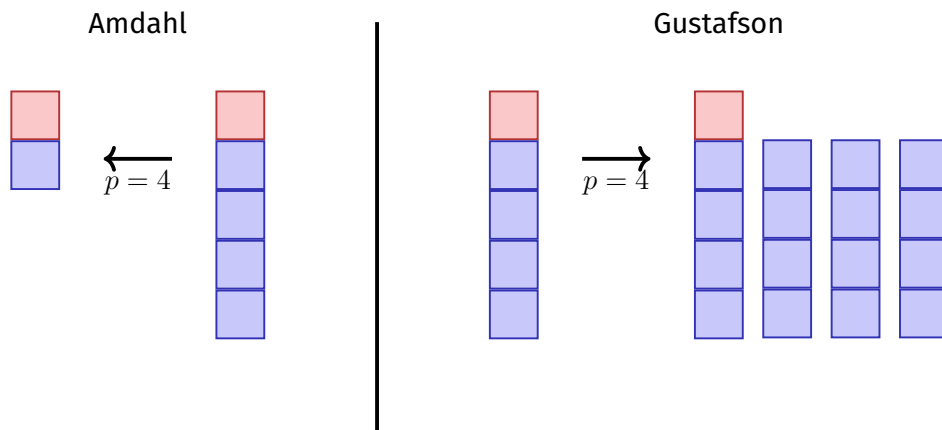
Speedup:

$$S_p = \frac{W_s + p \cdot W_p}{W_s + W_p} = p \cdot (1 - \lambda) + \lambda$$

$$= p - \lambda(p - 1)$$

935

Amdahl vs. Gustafson



936

Amdahl vs. Gustafson

The laws of Amdahl and Gustafson are models of speedup for parallelization.

Amdahl assumes a fixed **relative** sequential portion, Gustafson assumes a fixed **absolute** sequential part (that is expressed as portion of the work W_1 and that does not increase with increasing work).

The two models do not contradict each other but describe the runtime speedup of different problems and algorithms.

937

28.7 Scheduling

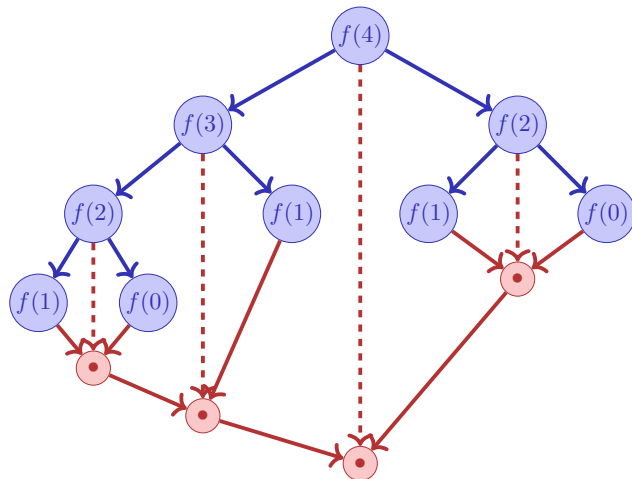
Example: Fibonacci

```
int fib_task(int x){  
    if (x < 2) {  
        return x;  
    } else {  
        auto f1 = std::async(fib_task, x-1);  
        auto f2 = std::async(fib_task, x-2);  
        return f1.get() + f2.get();  
    }  
}
```

938

939

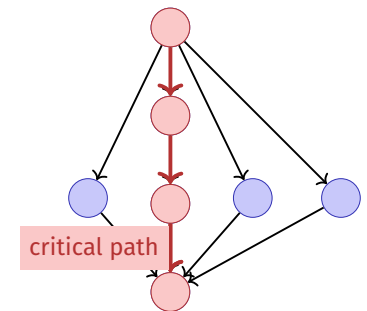
Task-Graph



940

Question

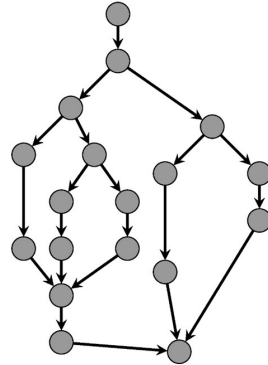
- Each Node (task) takes 1 time unit.
- Arrows depict dependencies.
- Minimal execution time when number of processors = ∞ ?



941

Performance Model

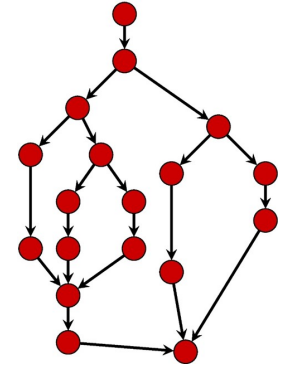
- p processors
- Dynamic scheduling
- T_p : Execution time on p processors



942

Performance Model

- T_p : Execution time on p processors
- T_1 : **Work**: time for executing total work on one processor
- T_1/T_p : Speedup



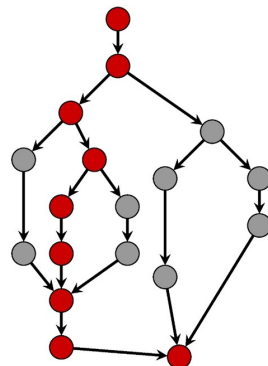
943

Performance Model

- T_∞ : **Span**: critical path, execution time on ∞ processors. Longest path from root to sink.
- T_1/T_∞ : **Parallelism**: wider is better
- Lower bounds:

$$T_p \geq T_1/p \quad \text{Work law}$$

$$T_p \geq T_\infty \quad \text{Span law}$$



944

Greedy Scheduler

Greedy scheduler: at each time it schedules as many as available tasks.

Theorem 43

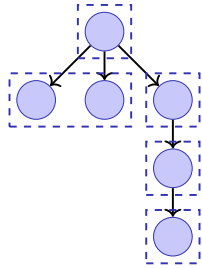
On an ideal parallel computer with p processors, a greedy scheduler executes a multi-threaded computation with work T_1 and span T_∞ in time

$$T_p \leq T_1/p + T_\infty$$

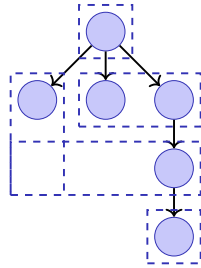
945

Example

Assume $p = 2$.



$$T_p = 5$$



$$T_p = 4$$

946

Consequence

if $p \ll T_1/T_\infty$, i.e. $T_\infty \ll T_1/p$, then

$$T_p \leq T_1/p + T_\infty \Rightarrow T_p \lesssim T_1/p$$

Fibonacci

$T_1(n)/T_\infty(n) = \Theta(\phi^n/n)$. For moderate sizes of n we can use a lot of processors yielding linear speedup.

948

Proof of the Theorem

Assume that all tasks provide the same amount of work.

- Complete step: p tasks are available.
- incomplete step: less than p steps available.

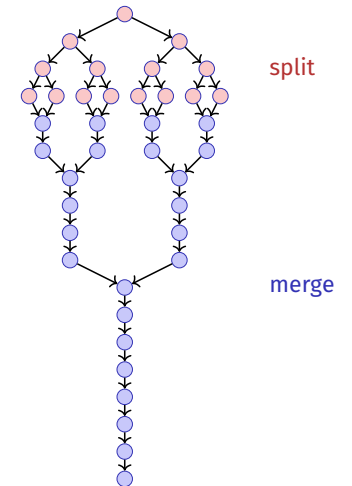
Assume that number of complete steps larger than $\lfloor T_1/p \rfloor$. Executed work $\geq \lfloor T_1/p \rfloor \cdot p + p = T_1 - T_1 \bmod p + p > T_1$. Contradiction. Therefore maximally $\lfloor T_1/p \rfloor$ complete steps.

We now consider the graph of tasks to be done. Any maximal (critical) path starts with a node t with $\deg^-(t) = 0$. An incomplete step executes all available tasks t with $\deg^-(t) = 0$ and thus decreases the length of the span. Number incomplete steps thus limited by T_∞ .

947

Example: Parallelism of Mergesort

- Work (sequential runtime) of Mergesort $T_1(n) = \Theta(n \log n)$.
- Span $T_\infty(n) = \Theta(n)$
- Parallelism $T_1(n)/T_\infty(n) = \Theta(\log n)$ (Maximally achievable speedup with $p = \infty$ processors)



949

29. Parallel Programming II

Shared Memory, Concurrency , Mutual Exclusion , Race Conditions [C++ Threads: Williams, Kap. 2.1-2.2], [C++ Race Conditions: Williams, Kap. 3.1] [C++ Mutexes: Williams, Kap. 3.2.1, 3.3.3]

950

Sharing Resources (Memory)

- Up to now: fork-join algorithms: data parallel or divide-and-conquer
- Simple structure (data independence of the threads) to avoid race conditions
- Does not work any more when threads access shared memory.

952

29.1 Shared Memory, Concurrency

951

Managing state

Managing common state: main challenge of concurrent programming.

Approaches:

- Immutability, for example constants.
- Isolated Mutability, for example thread-local variables, stack.
- Shared mutable data, for example references to shared memory, global variables

953

Protect the shared state

- Method 1: locks, guarantee exclusive access to shared data.
- Method 2: lock-free data structures, exclusive access with a much finer granularity.
- Method 3: transactional memory (not treated in class)

Canonical Example

```
class BankAccount {  
    int balance = 0;  
public:  
    int getBalance(){ return balance; }  
    void setBalance(int x) { balance = x; }  
    void withdraw(int amount) {  
        int b = getBalance();  
        setBalance(b - amount);  
    }  
    // deposit etc.  
};
```

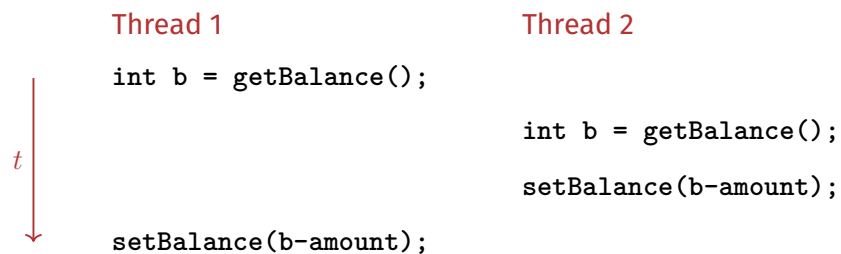
(correct in a single-threaded world)

954

955

Bad Interleaving

Parallel call to `withdraw(100)` on the same account



956

Tempting Traps

WRONG:

```
void withdraw(int amount) {  
    int b = getBalance();  
    if (b==getBalance())  
        setBalance(b - amount);  
}
```

Bad interleavings cannot be solved with a repeated reading

957

Tempting Traps

also WRONG:

```
void withdraw(int amount) {
    setBalance(getBalance() - amount);
}
```

Assumptions about atomicity of operations are almost always wrong

Mutual Exclusion

We need a concept for mutual exclusion

Only one thread may execute the operation withdraw **on the same account** at a time.

The programmer has to make sure that mutual exclusion is used.

958

959

More Tempting Traps

```
class BankAccount {
    int balance = 0;
    bool busy = false;
public:
    void withdraw(int amount) {
        while (busy); // spin wait
        busy = true;
        int b = getBalance();
        setBalance(b - amount);
        busy = false;
    }

    // deposit would spin on the same boolean
};
```

does not work!

Just moved the problem!

Thread 1

```
while (busy); //spin
busy = true;
int b = getBalance();
setBalance(b - amount);
```

Thread 2

```
while (busy); //spin
busy = true;
int b = getBalance();
setBalance(b - amount);
```

t

960

961

How ist this correctly implemented?

- We use **locks** (mutexes) from libraries
- They use hardware primitives, **Read-Modify-Write** (RMW) operations that can, in an atomic way, read and write depending on the read result.
- Without RMW Operations the algorithm is non-trivial and requires at least atomic access to variable of primitive type.

962

Critical Sections and Mutual Exclusion

Critical Section

Piece of code that may be executed by at most one process (thread) at a time.

Mutual Exclusion

Algorithm to implement a critical section

```
acquire_mutex(); // entry algorithm\\
...             // critical section
release_mutex(); // exit algorithm
```

964

29.2 Mutual Exclusion

963

Required Properties of Mutual Exclusion

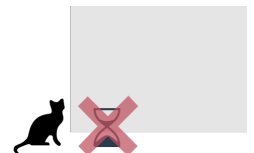
Correctness (Safety)

- At most one process executes the critical section code



Liveness

- Acquiring the mutex must terminate in finite time when no process executes in the critical section



965

Almost Correct

```
class BankAccount {
    int balance = 0;
    std::mutex m; // requires #include <mutex>
public:
    ...
    void withdraw(int amount) {
        m.lock();
        int b = getBalance();
        setBalance(b - amount);
        m.unlock();
    }
};
```

What if an exception occurs?

966

RAII Approach

```
class BankAccount {
    int balance = 0;
    std::mutex m;
public:
    ...
    void withdraw(int amount) {
        std::lock_guard<std::mutex> guard(m);
        int b = getBalance();
        setBalance(b - amount);
    } // Destruction of guard leads to unlocking m
};
```

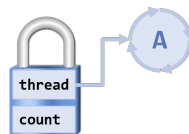
What about getBalance / setBalance?

967

Reentrant Locks

Reentrant Lock (recursive lock)

- remembers the currently affected thread;
- provides a counter
 - Call of lock: counter incremented
 - Call of unlock: counter is decremented. If counter = 0 the lock is released.



968

Account with reentrant lock

```
class BankAccount {
    int balance = 0;
    std::recursive_mutex m;
    using guard = std::lock_guard<std::recursive_mutex>;
public:
    int getBalance(){ guard g(m); return balance;
    }
    void setBalance(int x) { guard g(m); balance = x;
    }
    void withdraw(int amount) { guard g(m);
        int b = getBalance();
        setBalance(b - amount);
    }
};
```

969

29.3 Race Conditions

Example: Stack

Stack with correctly synchronized access:

```
template <typename T>
class stack{
    ...
    std::recursive_mutex m;
    using guard = std::lock_guard<std::recursive_mutex>;
public:
    bool isEmpty(){ guard g(m); ... }
    void push(T value){ guard g(m); ... }
    T pop(){ guard g(m); ... }
};
```

Race Condition

- A **race condition** occurs when the result of a computation depends on scheduling.
- We make a distinction between **bad interleavings** and **data races**
- **Bad interleavings** can occur even when a mutex is used.

Peek

Forgot to implement peek. Like this?

```
template <typename T>
T peek (stack<T> &s){
    T value = s.pop();
    s.push(value);
    return value;
}
```

not thread-safe!

Despite its questionable style the code is correct in a sequential world. Not so in concurrent programming.

Bad Interleaving!

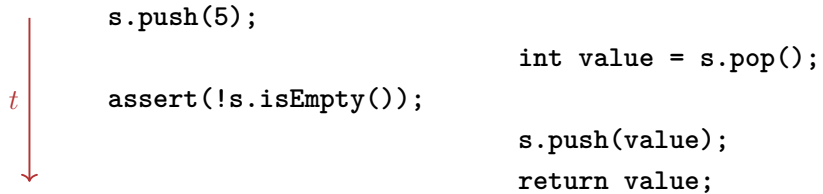
Initially empty stack s , only shared between threads 1 and 2.

Thread 1 pushes a value and checks that the stack is then non-empty.

Thread 2 reads the topmost value using peek().

Thread 1

Thread 2



```
s.push(5);  
assert(!s.isEmpty());  
  
int value = s.pop();  
s.push(value);  
return value;
```

974

The fix

Peek must be protected with the same lock as the other access methods

975

Bad Interleavings

Race conditions as bad interleavings can happen on a high level of abstraction

In the following we consider a different form of race condition: data race.

How about this?

```
class counter{  
    int count = 0;  
    std::recursive_mutex m;  
    using guard = std::lock_guard<std::recursive_mutex>;  
public:  
    int increase(){  
        return ++count;  
    }  
    int get(){  
        return count;  
    }  
}
```

not thread-safe!

976

977

Why wrong?

It looks like nothing can go wrong because the update of count happens in a “tiny step”.

But this code is still wrong and depends on language-implementation details you cannot assume.

This problem is called **Data-Race**

Moral: **Do not introduce a data race, even if every interleaving you can think of is correct. Don't make assumptions on the memory order.**

978

We look deeper

```
class C {  
    int x = 0;  
    int y = 0;  
public:  
    void f() {  
        A x = 1;  
        B y = 1;  
    }  
    void g() {  
        C int a = y;  
        D int b = x;  
        assert(b >= a);  
    }  
}
```

Can this fail?

There is no interleaving of f and g that would cause the assertion to fail:

- A B C D ✓
- A C B D ✓
- A C D B ✓
- C A B D ✓
- C C D B ✓
- C D A B ✓

It can nevertheless fail!

980

A bit more formal

Data Race (low-level Race-Conditions) Erroneous program behavior caused by insufficiently synchronized accesses of a shared resource by multiple threads, e.g. Simultaneous read/write or write/write of the same memory location

Bad Interleaving (High Level Race Condition) Erroneous program behavior caused by an unfavorable execution order of a multithreaded algorithm, even if that makes use of otherwise well synchronized resources.

979

One Reason: Memory Reordering

Rule of thumb: Compiler and hardware allowed to make changes that do not affect the *semantics of a sequentially executed program*

<pre>void f() { x = 1; y = x+1; z = x+1; }</pre>	\longleftrightarrow sequentially equivalent	<pre>void f() { x = 1; z = x+1; y = x+1; }</pre>
--	--	--

981

From a Software-Perspective

Modern compilers do not give guarantees that a global ordering of memory accesses is provided as in the sourcecode:

- Some memory accesses may be even optimized away completely!
- Huge potential for optimizations – and for errors, when you make the wrong assumptions

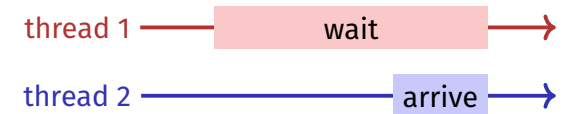
Example: Self-made Rendezvous

```
int x; // shared
```

```
void wait(){  
    x = 1;  
    while(x == 1);  
}
```

```
void arrive(){  
    x = 2;  
}
```

Assume thread 1 calls wait, later thread 2 calls arrive. What happens?



982

983

Compilation

Source

```
int x; // shared
```

```
void wait(){  
    x = 1;  
    while(x == 1);  
}
```

```
void arrive(){  
    x = 2;  
}
```

Without optimisation

```
wait:  
movl $0x1, x  
test: ←  
mov x, %eax  
cmp $0x1, %eax  
je test
```

if equal

With optimisation

```
wait:  
movl $0x1, x  
test: ← always  
jmp test
```

always

```
arrive:  
movl $0x2, x
```

```
arrive  
movl $0x2, x
```

984

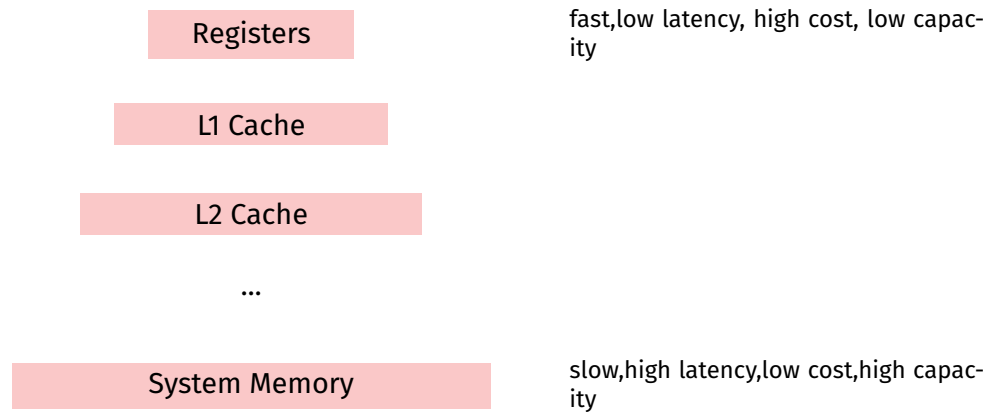
Hardware Perspective

Modern multiprocessors do not enforce global ordering of all instructions for performance reasons:

- Most processors have a pipelined architecture and can execute (parts of) multiple instructions simultaneously. They can even reorder instructions internally.
- Each processor has a local cache, and thus loads/stores to shared memory can become visible to other processors at different times

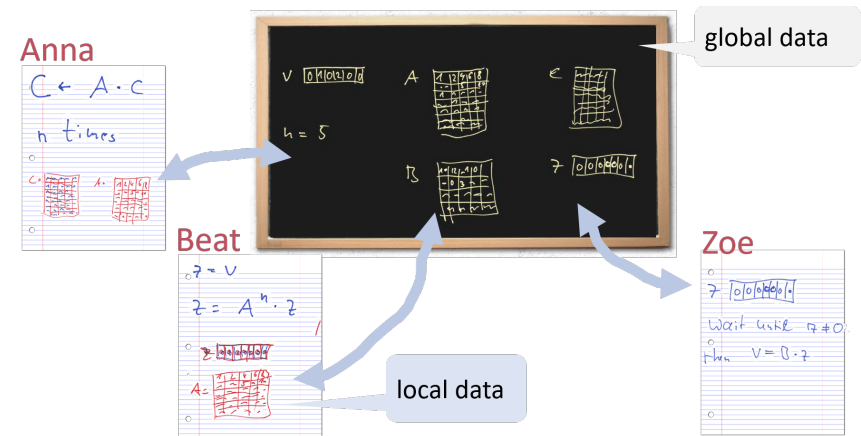
985

Memory Hierarchy



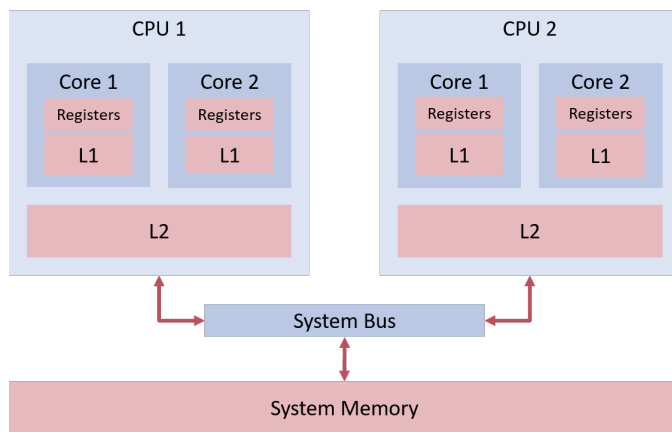
986

An Analogy



987

Schematic



988

Memory Models

When and if effects of memory operations become visible for threads, depends on hardware, runtime system and programming language.

A **memory model** (e.g. that of C++) provides minimal guarantees for the effect of memory operations

- leaving open possibilities for optimisation
- containing guidelines for writing thread-safe programs

For instance, C++ provides **guarantees when synchronisation with a mutex** is used.

989

Fixed

```
class C {
    int x = 0;
    int y = 0;
    std::mutex m;
public:
    void f() {
        m.lock(); x = 1; m.unlock();
        m.lock(); y = 1; m.unlock();
    }
    void g() {
        m.lock(); int a = y; m.unlock();
        m.lock(); int b = x; m.unlock();
        assert(b >= a); // cannot fail
    }
};
```

990

Atomic

Here also possible:

```
class C {
    std::atomic_int x{0}; // requires #include <atomic>
    std::atomic_int y{0};
public:
    void f() {
        x = 1;
        y = 1;
    }
    void g() {
        int a = y;
        int b = x;
        assert(b >= a); // cannot fail
    }
};
```

991

30. Parallel Programming III

Deadlock and Starvation , Producer-Consumer , The concept of the monitor , Condition Variables [Deadlocks : Williams, Kap. 3.2.4-3.2.5]
[Condition Variables: Williams, Kap. 4.1]

Deadlock Motivation

```
class BankAccount {
    int balance = 0;
    std::recursive_mutex m;
    using guard = std::lock_guard<std::recursive_mutex>;
public:
    ...
    void withdraw(int amount) { guard g(m); ... }
    void deposit(int amount){ guard g(m); ... }

    void transfer(int amount, BankAccount& to){
        guard g(m);
        withdraw(amount);
        to.deposit(amount);
    }
};
```

Problem?

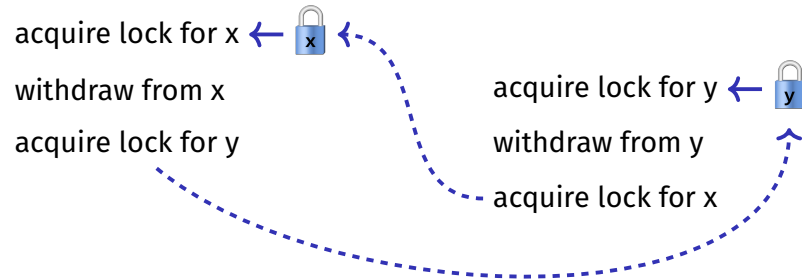
992

993

Deadlock Motivation

Suppose BankAccount instances x and y

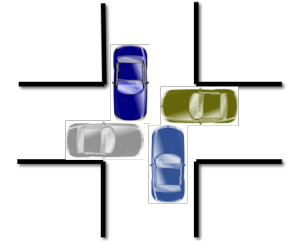
Thread 1: $x.transfer(1,y);$ Thread 2: $y.transfer(1,x);$



994

Deadlock

Deadlock: two or more processes are mutually blocked because each process waits for another of these processes to proceed.



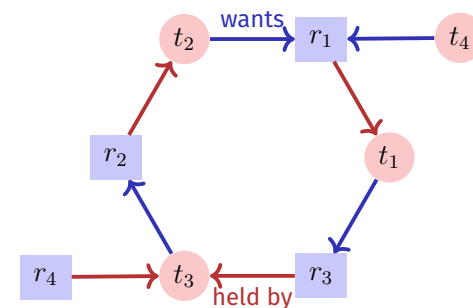
995

Threads and Resources

- Grafically t and Resources (Locks) r
- Thread t attempts to acquire resource a : $t \rightarrow a$
- Resource b is held by thread q : $s \leftarrow b$

Deadlock – Detection

A deadlock for threads t_1, \dots, t_n occurs when the graph describing the relation of the n threads and resources r_1, \dots, r_m contains a cycle.



996

997

Techniques

- **Deadlock detection** detects cycles in the dependency graph. Deadlocks can in general not be healed: releasing locks generally leads to inconsistent state
- **Deadlock avoidance** amounts to techniques to ensure a cycle can never arise
 - Coarser granularity “one lock for all”
 - Two-phase locking with retry mechanism
 - Lock Hierarchies
 - ...
 - **Resource Ordering**

998

Back to the Example

```
class BankAccount {
    int id; // account number, also used for locking order
    std::recursive_mutex m; ...
public:
    ...
    void transfer(int amount, BankAccount& to){
        if (id < to.id){
            guard g(m); guard h(to.m);
            withdraw(amount); to.deposit(amount);
        } else {
            guard g(to.m); guard h(m);
            withdraw(amount); to.deposit(amount);
        }
    }
};
```

999

C++11 Style

```
class BankAccount {
    ...
    std::recursive_mutex m;
    using guard = std::lock_guard<std::recursive_mutex>;
public:
    ...
    void transfer(int amount, BankAccount& to){
        std::lock(m,to.m); // lock order done by C++
        // tell the guards that the lock is already taken:
        guard g(m,std::adopt_lock); guard h(to.m,std::adopt_lock);
        withdraw(amount);
        to.deposit(amount);
    }
};
```

1000

By the way...

```
class BankAccount {
    int balance = 0;
    std::recursive_mutex m;
    using guard = std::lock_guard<std::recursive_mutex>;
public:
    ...
    void withdraw(int amount) { guard g(m); ... }
    void deposit(int amount){ guard g(m); ... }

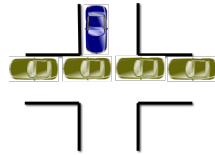
    void transfer(int amount, BankAccount& to){
        withdraw(amount);
        to.deposit(amount);
    }
};
```

This would have worked here also. But then for a very short amount of time, money disappears, which does not seem acceptable (transient inconsistency!)

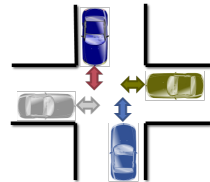
1001

Starvation und Livelock

Starvation: the repeated but unsuccessful attempt to acquire a resource that was recently (transiently) free.

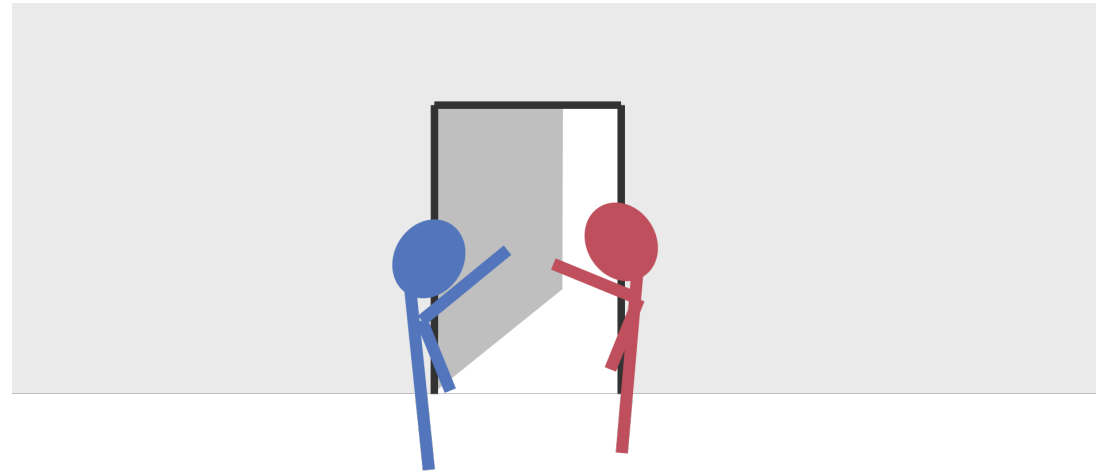


Livelock: competing processes are able to detect a potential deadlock but make no progress while trying to resolve it.



1002

Politelock



1003

Producer-Consumer Problem

Two (or more) processes, producers and consumers of data should become decoupled by some data structure.

Fundamental Data structure for building pipelines in software.



1004

Sequential implementation (unbounded buffer)

```
class BufferS {
    std::queue<int> buf;
public:
    void put(int x){
        buf.push(x);
    }

    int get(){
        while (buf.empty()){ } // wait until data arrive
        int x = buf.front();
        buf.pop();
        return x;
    }
};
```

not thread-safe

1005

How about this?

```
class Buffer {
    std::recursive_mutex m;
    using guard = std::lock_guard<std::recursive_mutex>;
    std::queue<int> buf;
public:
    void put(int x){ guard g(m);
        buf.push(x);
    }
    int get(){ guard g(m);
        while (buf.empty()){
            int x = buf.front();
            buf.pop();
            return x;
        }
    };
};
```

Deadlock

1006

Well, then this?

```
void put(int x){
    guard g(m);
    buf.push(x);
}
int get(){
    m.lock();
    while (buf.empty()){
        m.unlock();
        m.lock();
    }
    int x = buf.front();
    buf.pop();
    m.unlock();
    return x;
}
```

Ok this works, but it wastes CPU time.

1007

Better?

```
void put(int x){
    guard g(m);
    buf.push(x);
}
int get(){
    m.lock();
    while (buf.empty()){
        m.unlock();
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(10));
        m.lock();
    }
    int x = buf.front(); buf.pop();
    m.unlock();
    return x;
}
```

Ok a little bit better, limits reactivity though.

1008

Moral

We do not want to implement waiting on a condition ourselves. There already is a mechanism for this: **condition variables**. The underlying concept is called **Monitor**.

1009

Monitor

Monitor abstract data structure equipped with a set of operations that run in mutual exclusion and that can be synchronized.

Invented by C.A.R. Hoare and Per Brinch Hansen (cf. Monitors – An Operating System Structuring Concept, C.A.R. Hoare 1974)



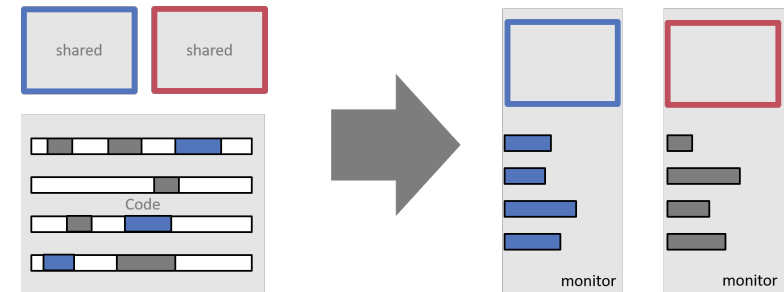
C.A.R. Hoare,
*1934



Per Brinch
Hansen
(1938-2007)

1010

Monitors vs. Locks



1011

Monitor and Conditions

Monitors provide, in addition to mutual exclusion, the following mechanism:

Waiting on conditions: If a condition does not hold, then

- Release the monitor lock
- Wait for the condition to become true
- Check the condition when a signal is raised

Signalling: Thread that might make the condition true:

- Send signal to potentially waiting threads

1012

Condition Variables

```
#include <mutex>
#include <condition_variable>
...

class Buffer {
    std::queue<int> buf;

    std::mutex m;
    // need unique_lock guard for conditions
    using guard = std::unique_lock<std::mutex>;
    std::condition_variable cond;
public:
    ...
};
```

1013

Condition Variables

```
class Buffer {  
    ...  
public:  
    void put(int x){  
        guard g(m);  
        buf.push(x);  
        cond.notify_one();  
    }  
    int get(){  
        guard g(m);  
        cond.wait(g, [&]{return !buf.empty();});  
        int x = buf.front(); buf.pop();  
        return x;  
    }  
};
```

1014

Technical Details

- A thread that waits using `cond.wait` runs at most for a short time on a core. After that it does not utilize compute power and “sleeps”.
- The notify (or signal-) mechanism wakes up sleeping threads that subsequently check their conditions.
 - `cond.notify_one` signals *one* waiting thread
 - `cond.notify_all` signals *all* waiting threads. Required when waiting threads wait potentially on *different* conditions.

1015

Technical Details

- Many other programming languages offer the same kind of mechanism. The checking of conditions (in a loop!) has to be usually implemented by the programmer.

Java Example

```
synchronized long get() {  
    long x;  
    while (isEmpty())  
        try {  
            wait();  
        } catch (InterruptedException e)  
        {  
            x = doGet();  
            return x;  
        }  
}  
  
synchronized put(long x){  
    doPut(x);  
    notify();  
}
```

1016

31. Parallel Programming IV

Futures, Read-Modify-Write Instructions, Atomic Variables, Idea of lock-free programming

[C++ Futures: Williams, Kap. 4.2.1-4.2.3] [C++ Atomic: Williams, Kap. 5.2.1-5.2.4, 5.2.7] [C++ Lockfree: Williams, Kap. 7.1-7.2.1]

1017

Futures: Motivation

Up to this point, threads have been functions without a result:

```
void action(some parameters){
    ...
}

std::thread t(action, parameters);
...
t.join();
// potentially read result written via ref-parameters
```

1018

We can do this already!

- We make use of the producer/consumer pattern, implemented with condition variables
- Start the thread with reference to a buffer
- We get the result from the buffer.
- Synchronisation is already implemented

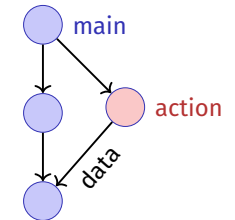
1020

Futures: Motivation

Now we would like to have the following

```
T action(some parameters){
    ...
    return value;
}

std::thread t(action, parameters);
...
value = get_value_from_thread();
```



1019

Reminder

```
template <typename T>
class Buffer {
    std::queue<T> buf;
    std::mutex m;
    std::condition_variable cond;
public:
    void put(T x){ std::unique_lock<std::mutex> g(m);
        buf.push(x);
        cond.notify_one();
    }
    T get(){ std::unique_lock<std::mutex> g(m);
        cond.wait(g, [&]{return (!buf.empty());});
        T x = buf.front(); buf.pop(); return x;
    }
};
```

1021

Simpler: only one value

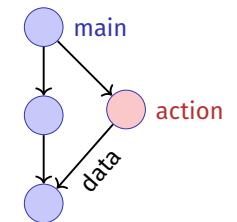
```
template <typename T>
class Buffer {
    T value; bool received = false;
    std::mutex m;
    std::condition_variable cond;
public:
    void put(T x){ std::unique_lock<std::mutex> g(m);
        value = x; received = true;
        cond.notify_one();
    }
    T get(){ std::unique_lock<std::mutex> g(m);
        cond.wait(g, [&]{return received;});
        return value;
    }
};
```

1022

Application

```
void action(Buffer<int>& c){
    // some long lasting operation ...
    c.put(42);
}

int main(){
    Buffer<int> c;
    std::thread t(action, std::ref(c));
    t.detach(); // no join required for free running thread
    // can do some more work here in parallel
    int val = c.get();
    // use result
    return 0;
}
```

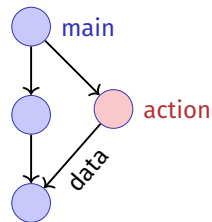


1023

With features of C++11

```
int action(){
    // some long lasting operation
    return 42;
}

int main(){
    std::future<int> f = std::async(action);
    // can do some work here in parallel
    int val = f.get();
    // use result
    return 0;
}
```



1024

Disclaimer

The explanations above are simplified. The real implementation of a Future can deal with timeouts, exceptions, memory allocators and is generally written more closely to the underlying operating system.

1025

31.2 Read-Modify-Write

Read-Modify-Write

Concept of **Read-Modify-Write**: The effect of reading, modifying and writing back becomes visible at one point in time (happens atomically).

Example: Atomic Operations in Hardware

CMPXCHG

Compare and Exchange

Compares the value in the AL, AX, EAX, or RAX register with the value in a register or a memory location (first operand). If the two values are equal, the instruction copies the value in the second operand to the first operand and sets the ZF flag in the (FLAGS register to 1. Otherwise, it copies the value in the first operand to the AL, AX, EAX, or RAX register and clears the ZF flag to 0.

The OF, SF, AF, DF, and CF flags are not affected by the instruction.

When the first memory operand is a register, the instruction copies the value in the second operand to the first operand and sets the ZF flag in the (FLAGS register to 1. Otherwise, it copies the value in the first operand to the AL, AX, EAX, or RAX register and clears the ZF flag to 0.

The forms of the instruction are:

Mnemonic

CMPXCHG reg

CMPXCHG reg, reg

CMPXCHG reg, mem

CMPXCHG reg, mem, reg

Related Instructions

CMPXCHG8B, CMPXCHG16B

12.5 Lock Prefix

The LOCK prefix causes certain kinds of memory read-modify-write instructions to occur atomically. The mechanism for doing so is implementation-dependent (for example, the mechanism may involve bus signaling or packet messaging between the processor and a memory controller). The prefix is intended to give the processor exclusive use of shared memory in a multiprocessor system.

The LOCK prefix can only be used with forms of the following instructions that write a memory operand: ADC, ADD, AND, BTC, BTR, BTS, CMPXCHG, CMPXCHG8B, CMPXCHG16B, DEC, INC, NEG, NOT, OR, SBB, SUB, XADD, XCHG, and XOR. An invalid-opcode exception occurs if the LOCK prefix is used with any other instruction.

«The lock prefix causes certain kinds of memory read-modify-write instructions to occur atomically»

AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual

1026

1027

Psudocode for CAS – Compare-And-Swap

```
bool CAS(int& variable, int& expected, int desired){
    if (variable == expected){
        variable = desired;
        return true;
    }
    else{
        expected = variable;
        return false;
    }
}
```

1028

1029

Application example CAS in C++11

We build our own (spin-)lock:

```
class Spinlock{
    std::atomic<bool> taken {false};
public:
    void lock(){
        bool old = false;
        while (!taken.compare_exchange_strong(old=false, true)){}
    }
    void unlock(){
        bool old = true;
        assert(taken.compare_exchange_strong(old, false));
    }
};
```

Lock-free programming

Data structure is called

- **lock-free**: at least one thread always makes progress in bounded time even if other algorithms run concurrently. Implies system-wide progress but not freedom from starvation.
- **wait-free**: all threads eventually make progress in bounded time. Implies freedom from starvation.

31.3 Lock-Free Programming

Ideas

Progress Conditions

	Non-Blocking	Blocking
Everyone makes progress	Wait-free	Starvation-free
Someone makes progress	Lock-free	Deadlock-free

Implication

- Programming with locks: each thread can block other threads indefinitely.
- Lock-free: failure or suspension of one thread cannot cause failure or suspension of another thread !

Lock-free programming: how?

Beobachtung:

- RMW-operations are implemented *wait-free* by hardware.
- Every thread sees his result of a CAS in bounded time.

Idea of lock-free programming: read the state of a data structure and change the data structure *atomically* if and only if the previously read state remained unchanged meanwhile.

1034

1035

Example: lock-free stack

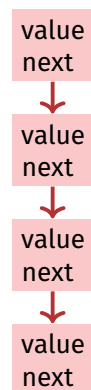
Simplified variant of a stack in the following

- pop does not check for an empty stack
- pop does not return a value

(Node)

Nodes:

```
struct Node {  
    T value;  
  
    Node<T>* next;  
    Node(T v, Node<T>* nxt): value(v), next(nxt) {}  
};
```

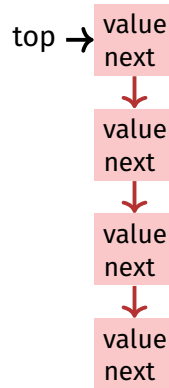


1036

1037

(Blocking Version)

```
template <typename T>
class Stack {
    Node<T> *top=nullptr;
    std::mutex m;
public:
    void push(T val){ guard g(m);
        top = new Node<T>(val, top);
    }
    void pop(){ guard g(m);
        Node<T>* old_top = top;
        top = top->next;
        delete old_top;
    }
};
```



1038

Lock-Free

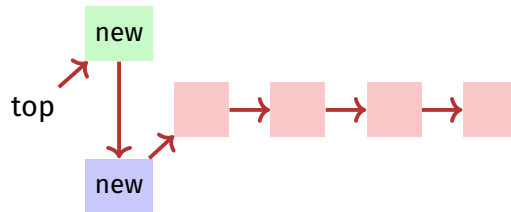
```
template <typename T>
class Stack {
    std::atomic<Node<T>*> top {nullptr};
public:
    void push(T val){
        Node<T>* new_node = new Node<T> (val, top);
        while (!top.compare_exchange_weak(new_node->next, new_node));
    }
    void pop(){
        Node<T>* old_top = top;
        while (!top.compare_exchange_weak(old_top, old_top->next));
        delete old_top;
    }
};
```

1039

Push

```
void push(T val){
    Node<T>* new_node = new Node<T> (val, top);
    while (!top.compare_exchange_weak(new_node->next, new_node));
}
```

2 Threads:

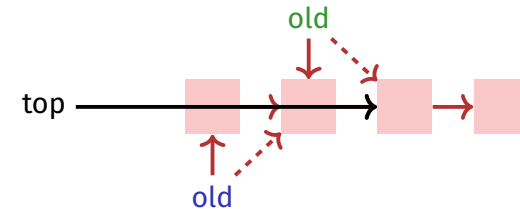


1040

Pop

```
void pop(){
    Node<T>* old_top = top;
    while (!top.compare_exchange_weak(old_top, old_top->next));
    delete old_top;
}
```

2 Threads:



1041

Lock-Free Programming – Limits

- Lock-Free Programming is complicated.
- If more than one value has to be changed in an algorithm (example: queue), it is becoming even more complicated: threads have to “help each other” in order to make an algorithm lock-free.
- The *ABA problem* can occur if memory is reused in an algorithm. A solution of this problem can be quite expensive.